

AVID TECHNOLOGY, INC.

FORM 10-K (Annual Report)

Filed 03/16/18 for the Period Ending 12/31/17

Address	75 NETWORK DRIVE BURLINGTON, MA, 01803
Telephone	978.640.3241
CIK	0000896841
Symbol	AVID
SIC Code	7372 - Services-Prepackaged Software
Industry	Computer Hardware
Sector	Technology
Fiscal Year	12/31

UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-K

(Mark One)

ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934
FOR THE FISCAL YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2017

OR

TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF
1934

FOR THE TRANSITION PERIOD FROM _____ TO _____

Commission File Number: 1-36254

Avid Technology, Inc.

(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in Its Charter)

Delaware

(State or Other Jurisdiction of
Incorporation or Organization)

04-2977748

(I.R.S. Employer
Identification No.)

75 Network Drive

Burlington, Massachusetts 01803

(Address of Principal Executive Offices, Including Zip Code)

(978) 640-6789

(Registrant's Telephone Number, Including Area Code)

Securities Registered Pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

<u>Title of Each Class</u>	<u>Name of each exchange on which registered</u>
Common Stock, \$.01 Par Value	Nasdaq Global Select Market

Securities Registered Pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: None

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes No

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Act. Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant: (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports) and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes No

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, an emerging growth company or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "emerging growth company" and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large Accelerated Filer <input type="checkbox"/>	Accelerated Filer <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Non-accelerated Filer <input type="checkbox"/>	Smaller Reporting Company <input type="checkbox"/>
(Do not check if smaller reporting company)	Emerging Growth Company <input type="checkbox"/>

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes No

The aggregate market value of the voting stock held by non-affiliates of the registrant was approximately \$208,976,192 based on the closing price of the Common Stock on the Nasdaq Global Select Market on June 30, 2017. The number of shares outstanding of the registrant's Common Stock as of March 12, 2018 was 41,480,037.

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

<u>Document Description</u>	<u>10-K Part</u>
Portions of the Registrant's Proxy Statement for the 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders	III

AVID TECHNOLOGY, INC.
FORM 10-K
FOR THE FISCAL YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2017

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
Cautionary Note on Forward-Looking Statements	iii
 <u>PART I.</u>	
ITEM 1. Business	1
ITEM 1A. Risk Factors	11
ITEM 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments	26
ITEM 2. Properties	26
ITEM 3. Legal Proceedings	26
ITEM 4. Mine Safety Disclosures	27
 <u>PART II.</u>	
ITEM 5. Market for Registrant’s Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities	28
ITEM 6. Selected Financial Data	30
ITEM 7. Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations	32
ITEM 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk	55
ITEM 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Financial Information	57
Reports of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firms	58
ITEM 9. Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure	96
ITEM 9A. Controls and Procedures	96
ITEM 9B. Other Information	98
 <u>PART III.</u>	
ITEM 10. Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance	99
ITEM 11. Executive Compensation	99
ITEM 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters	99
ITEM 13. Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence	99
ITEM 14. Principal Accountant Fees and Services	99
 <u>PART IV.</u>	
ITEM 15. Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules	100
 <u>INDEX TO EXHIBITS</u>	 101
 <u>SIGNATURES</u>	 104

CAUTIONARY NOTE ON FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This Annual Report on Form 10-K, or Form 10-K, filed by Avid Technology, Inc. together with its consolidated subsidiaries, “Avid” or the “Company”, or “we”, “us” or “our” unless the context indicates otherwise, includes forward-looking statements within the meaning of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. For this purpose, any statements contained in this Form 10-K that relate to future results or events are forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements may be identified by use of forward-looking words, such as “anticipate,” “believe,” “confidence,” “could,” “estimate,” “expect,” “feel,” “intend,” “may,” “plan,” “should,” “seek,” “will” and “would,” or similar expressions.

Forward-looking statements may involve subjects relating to, among others, the following:

- our ability to successfully implement our strategy, including our cost saving strategies;
- the anticipated trends and developments in our markets and the success of our products in these markets;
- our ability to develop, market and sell new products and services;
- our business strategies and market positioning;
- our ability to achieve our goal of expanding our market positions;
- anticipated trends relating to our sales, financial condition or results of operations, including our shift to a recurring revenue model and complex enterprise sales with elongated sales cycles;
- the expected timing of recognition of revenue backlog as revenue, and the timing of recognition of revenues from subscription offerings;
- our ability to successfully consummate acquisitions, or investment transactions and successfully integrate acquired businesses;
- our anticipated benefits and synergies from, and the anticipated financial impact of, any acquired business;
- the anticipated performance of our products;
- changes in inventory levels;
- plans regarding repatriation of foreign earnings;
- the outcome, impact, costs and expenses of any litigation or government inquiries to which we are or become subject;
- the effect of the continuing worldwide macroeconomic uncertainty on our business and results of operations, including Brexit;
- our ability to accelerate growth of our Cloud-enabled platform;
- our compliance with covenants contained in the agreements governing our indebtedness;
- our ability to service our debt and meet the obligations thereunder, including our ability to satisfy our conversion and repurchase obligations under our convertible notes due 2020;
- seasonal factors;
- fluctuations in foreign exchange and interest rates;
- the risk of restatement of our financial statements;
- estimated asset and liability values and amortization of our intangible assets;
- our capital resources and the adequacy thereof; and
- worldwide political uncertainty, in particular the risk that the United States may withdraw from or materially modify NAFTA or other international trade agreements.

Actual results and events in future periods may differ materially from those expressed or implied by the forward-looking statements in this Form 10-K. There are a number of factors that could cause actual events or results to differ materially from

those indicated or implied by forward-looking statements, many of which are beyond our control, including the risk factors discussed in Item 1A of this Form 10-K. In addition, the forward-looking statements contained in this Form 10-K represent our estimates only as of the date of this filing and should not be relied upon as representing our estimates as of any subsequent date. While we may elect to update these forward-looking statements in the future, we specifically disclaim any obligation to do so, whether to reflect actual results, changes in assumptions, changes in other factors affecting such forward-looking statements or otherwise.

The information included under the heading “Stock Performance Graph” in Item 5 of this Form 10-K is “furnished” and not “filed” and shall not be deemed to be “soliciting material” or subject to Regulation 14A, shall not be deemed “filed” for purposes of Section 18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act, or otherwise subject to the liabilities of that section, nor shall it be deemed incorporated by reference in any filing under the Exchange Act or the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act, except to the extent that we specifically incorporate it by reference.

We own or have rights to trademarks and service marks that we use in connection with the operation of our business. “Avid” is a trademark of Avid Technology, Inc. Other trademarks, logos, and slogans registered or used by us and our subsidiaries in the United States and other countries include, but are not limited to, the following: Avid Everywhere, Avid NEXIS, AirSpeed, EUCON, iNEWS, Interplay, MediaCentral, Mbox, Media Composer, NewsCutter, Nitris, Pro Tools, Sibelius and Symphony. Other trademarks appearing in this Form 10-K are the property of their respective owners.

PART I

ITEM 1. BUSINESS

OVERVIEW

We develop, market, sell, and support software, hardware and integrated solutions for video and audio content creation, management and distribution. We do this by providing an open and efficient platform for digital media, along with a comprehensive set of tools and workflow solutions. Digital media are video, audio or graphic elements in which the image, sound or picture is recorded and stored as digital values, as opposed to analog or tape-based signals. Our solutions are used in production and post-production facilities; film studios; network, affiliate, independent and cable television stations; recording studios; live-sound performance venues; advertising agencies; government and educational institutions; corporate communications departments; and by independent video and audio creative professionals, as well as aspiring professionals. Projects produced using our tools, platform and ecosystem include feature films, television programming, live events, news broadcasts, sports productions, commercials, music, video and other digital media content.

Our mission is to enable our clients to create, connect and collaborate through continuous innovation of an open media ecosystem, powerful common platform and tools. Our clients rely on Avid to create the most prestigious and award-winning feature films, music recordings, television shows, live concerts, sporting events and news broadcasts. Avid has been honored for technological innovation with 15 Emmy Awards, one Grammy Award, two Oscars and the first ever America Cinema Editors Technical Excellence Award. Our creative tools and workflow solutions were used in all 2018 Oscar nominated films for Best Film Editing, Best Sound Editing, Best Sound Mixing, and Best Original Score and used in the winner of Best Picture.

RECENT EVENTS

On February 25, 2018, our Board of Directors voted to terminate the employment of Louis Hernandez Jr., Chief Executive Officer, effective immediately. As a result of this termination under his employment agreement, Mr. Hernandez is no longer our Chief Executive Officer and resigned from his position on our Board of Directors. In connection with Mr. Hernandez's termination, the Board appointed Jeff Rosica, who has been serving as our President, as our Chief Executive Officer, effective immediately. Mr. Rosica joined Avid as Senior Vice President of Worldwide Field Operations in January 2013. In January 2016, Mr. Rosica was appointed Senior Vice President, Chief Sales and Marketing Officer and in December 2016, he was appointed President of the Company. From early 2002 until joining Avid, Mr. Rosica served in various capacities with Grass Valley, LLC, a broadcast equipment supplier, most recently as Executive Vice President, Chief Sales and Marketing Officer. Prior to that, Mr. Rosica was Vice President and General Manager of Phillips Broadcast from 1996. Also in connection with Mr. Hernandez's resignation from his position on our Board of Directors, the Board has appointed Nancy Hawthorne as our new chair.

CORPORATE STRATEGY

Technology has enabled almost every aspect of how we live to become increasingly digitized, and acceleration of digitization is having a tremendous impact on the media industry and altering the industry value chain. Today's consumers are empowered to create and consume content on-demand, anywhere, anytime. Organizations in the media industry are under pressure to connect and automate the entire creation-to-consumption workflow, and are facing a number of challenges, including:

- *Increasing rate of content creation* – many organizations are feeling intense pressure to create more and more content, increasingly tailored for audience niches, while also facing greater competition from nimble players. At the same time, access to creative tools is wider today than ever before, giving more people the ability to tell their stories.
- *Exponential growth of distribution platforms* – the economic models of new distribution platforms are often not fully matured or realized. Many organizations need to embrace new opportunities while also maximizing heritage business.

- *Continued increase in content consumption* – there has been a tremendous increase in viewership in the last decade, but it is spread across many outlets and channels, and while there is this increase in viewership, it is dwarfed by an increase in competitive content. In addition, with growing audience fragmentation, compelling content, brand equity and relevance is even more critical today.
- *Media technology budgets* – today’s economic realities are placing pressure on media technology budgets, while content output must increase exponentially to deliver on the market requirements. Content creators and distributors have to do a lot more, with essentially flat budgets.

We believe our strategic understanding and technological expertise uniquely position us to effectively help organizations in the media industry navigate through this period of unprecedented change. Our products and solutions allow our customers to (i) create high-quality, engaging and immersive content, (ii) distribute to more outlets and devices, (iii) maximize and protect the value of media assets, and (iv) create operational and capital efficiency. Our unique position across the media industry includes:

- the comprehensive tools and solutions to create, distribute and optimize media, with proven end-to-end solutions that are precisely designed to optimize content production and media workflow efficiencies;
- the open, integrated and efficient platform designed for media, providing an ecosystem that future-proofs and protects technology investments;
- flexible deployment models, licensing options and commercial structures, including on premises, public or private cloud, or hybrid deployments; perpetual, subscription or enterprise licensing; and flexible commercial models, all adaptable to the individual needs of each client; and
- a preeminent client and user community that helps shape our collective future, including the industry’s most inspirational and award-winning thought leaders, innovators and storytellers that keep our community at the forefront of creative techniques and workflow best practices.

Our strategy for connecting creative professionals and media organizations with audiences in a powerful, efficient, collaborative, and profitable way leverages our Avid MediaCentral Platform - the open, extensible, and customizable foundation that streamlines and simplifies content workflows by integrating all Avid or third-party products and services that run on top of it. The platform provides secure and protected access, and enables the faster and easier creation and delivery of content through a set of modular application suites and new public and private marketplaces, that together, represent an open, integrated and flexible media production and distribution environment for the media industry. Our Avid Advantage Support Plans reinforce our strategy by offering a new standard in service, support and education to enable our customers to derive more efficiency from their Avid investment. In addition, the Avid Customer Association, or ACA, was established as the world’s most innovative and influential media technology community representing thousands of organizations and over 20,000 professionals from all levels of the industry. The ACA fosters collaboration between Avid, its customers and other industry colleagues to help shape our product offerings as well as providing a means to shape our industry together.

The set of modular application suites and public and private marketplaces on the Avid MediaCentral Platform are summarized below:

- *Artist Suite* encompasses all of our audio and video creative tools for editing, mixing, and live sound production. Products and tools in the Artist Suite can be deployed on premise, cloud-enabled, or through a hybrid approach. Users can collaborate to access, edit, and share the same media, and collaborate with others as if they were all in the same facility.
- *Media Suite* offers solutions to securely manage, distribute, and re-purpose assets. The solutions will be based on a new metadata tracking system, where metadata will be generated algorithmically and provide a greater level of detail, making it possible to take a flexible and adaptable view of assets at any stage of the lifecycle.
- *Studio Suite* comprises in-studio tools for on-air program and viewership enhancement, including 3D real-time graphics, replay servers, sports enhancements and virtual studios.
- *Storage Suite* refers to all of our products and tools used to capture, store, and deliver media, including online storage, nearline storage, and ingest/playout servers. These products and tools work in close concert with the Media Suite’s tagging and asset management.

- *Marketplaces* provide an easy and secure way for the content creators to share or publish their products or elements. The marketplaces are designed for collaboration and distribution among individuals and enterprises.

Another key element of our strategy is our transition to a subscription or recurring revenue based model. We started offering cloud-based subscription licensing options for some of our products and solutions in 2014, and had approximately 94,000 paying cloud-enabled subscribers at the end of 2017, a 54% increase from the end of 2016. These licensing options offer choices in pricing and deployment to suit our customers' needs and are expected to increase recurring revenue on a longer-term basis. However, during our transition to a recurring revenue model, we expect that our revenue, deferred revenue and cash flow from operations will be adversely affected as an increasing portion of our total revenue is recognized ratably rather than up front, and as new product offerings are sold at a wider variety of price points.

A key component of our strategy has been to implement programs to reduce costs, increase operational efficiencies, align talent and enhance our business, including the cost efficiency program started in February 2016. The cost efficiency program encompassed a series of measures intended to allow us to operate in a leaner, more directed cost structure. These measures included reductions in our workforce, consolidation of facilities, transfers of certain business processes to lower cost regions and reductions in other third-party services costs. The cost efficiency program was substantially completed in 2017.

CUSTOMER MARKETS

We provide digital media content-creation, management and distribution products and solutions to customers in the following markets:

- *Broadcast and Media*. This market consists of broadcast, government, sports and other organizations that acquire, create, process, and/or distribute audio and video content to a large audience for communication, entertainment, analysis, and/or forensic purposes. Customers in this industry rely on workflows that span content acquisition, creation, editing, distribution, sales and redistribution and utilize all content distribution platforms, including web, mobile, internet protocol television, cable, satellite, on-air and various other proprietary platforms. For this market, we offer a range of open products and solutions including hardware- and software-based video- and audio-editing tools, graphics solutions, collaborative workflow and asset management solutions, and automation tools, as well as scalable media storage options. Our domain expertise also allows us to provide customers in this market with a range of professional and consulting services. We sell into this market through our direct sales force and resellers.
- *Video and Audio Post and Professional*. This market is made up of individual artists and entities that create audio and video media as a paid service, but do not currently distribute media to end consumers on a large scale. This industry spans a wide-ranging target audience that includes: independent video editors, facilities and filmmakers that produce video media as a business but are not broadcasters; professional sound designers, editors and mixers and facilities that specialize in the creation of audio for picture; songwriters, musicians, producers, film composers and engineers who compose and record music professionally; technicians, engineers, rental companies and facilities that present, record and broadcast audio and video for live performances; and students and teachers in career technical education programs in high schools, colleges and universities, as well as in post-secondary vocational schools, that prepare students for professional media production careers in the digital workplace. For this market, we offer a range of products and solutions based on the Avid MediaCentral Platform, including hardware- and software-based creative production tools, graphics solutions, scalable media storage options and collaborative workflows. Our domain expertise also allows us to provide customers in this market with a broad range of professional services. We sell into this market through storefront and on-line retailers, as well as through our direct sales force and resellers.

PRODUCTS AND SERVICES

Overview

Our software and hardware products and solutions, as well as our services offerings, address the diverse needs, skills and sophistication levels of our customers. All of our key products and solutions have been integrated into our MediaCentral Platform, which provides the industry's most open, integrated and efficient platform designed for media. In addition, we

provide flexible deployment models, licensing options and commercial structures so our customers can choose how, when and where to deploy and use our tools.

The following table presents our net revenues by category, which includes the amortization of deferred revenues, for the periods indicated (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Video products and solutions	\$ 114,787	\$ 155,408	\$ 201,559
Audio products and solutions	94,674	127,702	134,812
Total products and solutions	209,461	283,110	336,371
Services	209,542	228,820	169,224
Total net revenues	\$ 419,003	\$ 511,930	\$ 505,595

The following table presents our net revenues by category, which includes the amortization of deferred revenues, as a percentage of total net revenues for the periods indicated:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Video products and solutions	27%	30%	40%
Audio products and solutions	23%	25%	27%
Total products and solutions	50%	55%	67%
Services	50%	45%	33%
Total net revenues	100%	100%	100%

Video Products and Solutions

Professional Video Creative Tools

We offer a range of software and hardware video-editing tools for the professional. Our award-winning Media Composer product line is used to edit video content, including television programming, commercials and films. Our cloud-enabled solutions including Media Composer enable broadcast news, sports, reality television and film professionals to acquire, access, edit and finish stories anytime, from everywhere. Leveraging an integrated, yet open, end-to-end architecture, this solution gives contributors the ability to craft stories where and while they are happening and speed them to delivery, while maintaining connectivity with the central production operation. We released Media Composer updates through subscription and perpetual license offerings and with resolution flexibility and independence, which allows users to manage and edit high-resolution media content with ease. In 2017, we released additional Media Composer product updates and upgrades to extend the production capabilities and demonstrate our continuing commitment to provide tools that allow for improved creativity and productivity of the professional editor.

Our Avid Artist I/O interfaces for Media Composer offer extensive HD and high-resolution format support across three interfaces-Avid Artist | DNxIQ, Avid Artist | DNxIV, and Avid Artist | DNxIP. This flexibility future-proofs production, enables video professionals to work with today's high-resolution formats (2k, 4K, and beyond), while supporting yesterday's lower ones.

Revenues from our professional video creative tools accounted for 6% , 9% and 10% of our net revenues for 2017 , 2016 and 2015 , respectively.

Media Management Solutions

We offer ingest, storage, asset management, editing, content transformation, virtual and augmented reality graphics, and distribution of content solutions for broadcast news, sports, and entertainment customers, enabling them to engage audiences

across multiple platforms. In 2017, we announced cloud availability of MediaCentral, Avid's next-generation media production suite extending from the Avid MediaCentral platform. The MediaCentral platform easily scales from simple to the sophisticated workflows. Built on a customizable cloud native microservices architecture, MediaCentral platform features a cloud-based user experience that runs on any device, workflow modules for editorial, production, news, graphics, and asset management, with apps to enhance and scale any of those modules, and a wide array of media services and partner connectors. Every user is connected in a completely integrated workflow environment, and gains a unified view into all their media with flexible deployment options for on premises, hybrid or cloud (public/private) environments.

As part of the delivery of the Avid MediaCentral platform, we announced an Editorial Management module for smaller creative teams that provides the same robust media management capabilities used by the largest media enterprises in the industry. Integrated within Media Composer via a panel, Editorial Management connects directly to Avid NEXIS storage to provide easy access to media with hyper-search functionality. Editorial Management also extends collaboration capabilities for the assistant editor in an easy to use web interface by allowing Media Composer bin creation, logging and search capabilities, greatly expanding the efficiency of creative teams.

Revenues from media management solutions accounted for 3% , 4% and 7% of our total net revenues in 2017 , 2016 and 2015 , respectively.

Broadcast Graphics

Since acquiring Orad Hi-Tech Systems Ltd., or Orad, in June 2015, we have continued to integrate the graphics portfolio deeper in to our platform creating greater accessibility, efficiency at scale to enable the delivery of content with graphics faster. In 2017, we rebranded the Orad line-up under the Maestro brand which offers customers comprehensive solutions for integrating virtual sets, augmented reality, and video wall control into existing workflows, ideal for any type of production needs in news, sports, entertainment, and in studio productions. Maestro features a core platform that includes a powerful render engine and featured design tool called Maestro | Designer that drives a line up of applications that are designed to address the specific challenges broadcasters face when automating the integration of statistics and graphics for the creation of an engaging broadcast. By adding graphics capabilities across the entire product line, we enable journalists and producers to add graphics remotely to news stories or enhance any story with innovative stats drive augmented reality graphics for presenting data in new and compelling ways.

Also in 2017, we announced our cloud service offerings for news and asset management. We partnered with Microsoft to deliver Azure certified solutions to support end-to-end hybrid and cloud deployments of news workflows. This includes announcing virtualized versions of those same offerings enabling broadcasters to migrate to more traditional IT infrastructures leveraging IP technology to integrate disparate systems within a broadcast environment.

We have re-imagined the next-generation newsroom, based around a story-centric workflow including multiple Avid solutions and new feature enhancements for modern newsroom management and news production. Our next-generation newsroom builds on the openness and integration of the MediaCentral Platform. Content can be pushed across a variety of platforms as the story evolves, including on-air, online, social media platforms, and on mobile devices. Audiences can get up-to-the-minute information and contribute to live broadcasts allowing broadcasters to leverage user generated content helping further establish a critical direct relationship with the audience.

Video Storage and Server Solutions

Our shared storage systems are real-time, open solutions that bring the power of shared storage to local, regional, national and multinational broadcasters and post-production facilities at competitive prices. Customers can improve allocation of creative resources and support changing project needs with an open, shared storage platform that includes file system technology on lower cost hardware, support for third-party applications and streamlined administration to create more content at an affordable price.

In 2016, we released the new Avid NEXIS family, the industry's first and only software-defined storage platform specifically designed for storing and managing media. Avid NEXIS enables fully virtualized storage so media organizations can adjust storage capacity mid-project, without disrupting workflows. Powered by our MediaCentral Platform, Avid NEXIS delivers media storage flexibility, scalability, and control for both Avid-based and third-party workflows. It has been designed to serve

small production teams as powerfully as large media enterprises and is the only storage platform built with the flexibility to grow with customers at every stage of their business.

In 2017, Avid announced and shipped the FastServe video server product line to assist broadcasters in making the move to UHD and IP based workflows with a new, modular architecture that enables the flexibility and reliability that broadcasters demand. The Avid FastServe family integrates with the MediaCentral platform, empowering creative teams to deliver content fast for news, sports, entertainment, and other media productions. Its 10GbE interface offers direct connection to Avid NEXIS storage, enabling real-time ingest, editing, and playout-even while media is being captured. Plus, its modular, future-proof architecture fits any budget, improves efficiency, and provides a smooth transition from HD to UHD, and from SDI workflows to video over IP.

We also continue to sell and support our on-air server solutions, including AirSpeed 5000 and AirSpeed 5500, which enable broadcasters to automate the ingest and playout of television and news programming. The AirSpeed 5000 and 5500 video servers work with a wide range of applications to improve workflow and provide cost-efficient ingest and play to air capabilities for broadcasters of any size. In 2017, we announced enhancements to Airspeed that improved performance.

Revenues from video storage and server solutions accounted for 16% , 16% and 22% of our total net revenues in 2017 , 2016 and 2015 , respectively.

Audio Products and Solutions

Digital Audio Software and Workstation Solutions

Our Pro Tools digital audio software and workstation solutions facilitate the audio production process, including music and sound creation, recording, editing, signal processing, integrated surround mixing and mastering, and reference video playback. The Pro Tools platform supports a wide variety of internally developed and third-party software plug-ins and integrated hardware. Pro Tools solutions are offered at a range of price points and are used by professionals in music, film, television, radio, game, Internet and other media production environments.

Throughout 2017, we released multiple feature-rich updates for Pro Tools that deliver solutions for both music creation and audio post production. These updates range from delivering customer requested MIDI enhancements and improvements to collaboration, to creating new integrated Dolby Atmos workflows and mixing for Virtual Reality content. Pro Tools 12.7 introduced Soundbase, an intelligent loop browser, as a way to influence music creativity. Along with the addition of 2GB of free Loopmasters loops, music creators can more easily find the sounds they need to bring their musical ideas to life. In version 12.8, Pro Tools | HD introduced integration with Dolby Atmos, the emerging new standard in immersive audio for film, television, and music. This integration, which was developed in close partnership with Dolby, delivers object-based, immersive mixing workflow and has been adopted by top professionals in the audio post community. Stemming from this improvement to immersive workflows, Pro Tools | HD 12.8.2 introduced support for third order Ambisonics, a popular format in virtual reality gaming development, and now includes the Facebook 360 Spatial Workstation. New MIDI editing enhancements in Pro Tools 12.8.3 improved the creative experience, and paved the way for more recent MIDI performance and editing features in Pro Tools 2018.

Revenues from digital audio software and workstation solutions accounted for 10% , 13% and 14% of our total net revenues in 2017 , 2016 and 2015 , respectively.

Control Surfaces, Consoles and Live-Sound Systems

We offer a range of complementary control surfaces and consoles, leveraging the open industry standard protocol EUCON (Extended User Control) to provide open solutions that meet the needs of customers ranging from the independent professional to the high-end broadcaster. Our Pro Tools | S6 control surface for sound recording, mixing and editing was designed as a state-of-the-art modular solution that scales to meet both current and future customer requirements. S6 is designed for audio professionals in demanding production environments, delivering the performance needed to complete projects faster while producing high quality mixes. Our Artist Series control surfaces offer integrated, hands-on control for price-sensitive applications. Compact and portable, all control surfaces in the Artist line feature EUCON, allowing hands-on

control of the user's applications. Finally, the free Pro Tools | Control iOS app enables customers record and mix faster and easier than working with a mouse and keyboard alone.

Our VENUE product family includes console systems for mixing audio for live sound reinforcement for concerts, theater performances and other public address events. We offer a range of VENUE systems designed for large performance settings, such as stadium concerts, as well as medium-sized theaters and houses of worship. VENUE systems allow the direct integration of Pro Tools solutions to create and playback live recordings.

In 2017, we released numerous software upgrades for our VENUE | S6L live sound system. Significant enhancements in the VENUE software included enhanced programming capabilities for sound designers to create captivating theater productions, powerful new workflows for monitor engineers to more easily access and mix their artists' sounds, and support for the Stage 16 Remote I/O Rack, a compact solution for expanding or distributing I/O across any performance space.

Revenues from control surfaces, consoles and live-sound systems accounted for 10% , 9% and 10% of our total net revenues in 2017 , 2016 and 2015 , respectively.

Notation Software

Avid Sibelius allows users to create, edit and publish musical scores. It is used by composers, arrangers and other music professionals. Student versions are also available to assist in the teaching of music composition and score writing. Sibelius music notation software offers sophisticated, yet easy-to-use tools that are proven and trusted by composers, arrangers, publishers, educators, and students alike. We offer Sibelius | Cloud Sharing, which allows users to view and play scores anywhere from the cloud using current web browsers and mobile devices. The newest version of our musical notation software, Sibelius 2018, helps composers create beautiful, accurate and easy-to-read scores.

We also offer Avid Scorch, an application for the Apple iPad mobile device that turns an iPad into an interactive score library with access to sheet music through an in-app store with more than 150,000 premium titles.

Professional Services and Customer Care

Our Professional Services team delivers workflow design and consulting; program and project management; system installation and commissioning; custom development and role-based product level training. The Professional Services team facilitates the engagement with our customers to maximize their investment in technology; increase their operational efficiency; and enable them to reduce deployment risk and implement our solutions.

Our Education team delivers public and private training to our customers and alliance partners to ensure that they have the necessary skills and technical competencies to deploy, use, administer and create Avid solutions. The Education team develops and licenses curriculum content for use by third party Avid Learning partners to deliver training to customers, users and alliance partners. The Education team includes the Avid Certification program which validates the skills and competency of Avid users, administrators, instructors, support representatives and developers.

Our Customer Care team provides customers with a partner committed to giving them help and support when they need it. We offer a variety of service contracts and support plans, allowing each customer to select the level of technical and operational support that they need to maintain their operational effectiveness. Our global Customer Care team of industry professionals offers a blend of technology expertise and real-world experience throughout the audio, visual, and entertainment industries. The team's mission is to provide timely, informed responses to our customers' issues, and proactive maintenance for our solutions to help our customers maintain high standards of operational effectiveness.

COMPETITION

Our customer markets are highly competitive and subject to rapid change and declining average selling prices. The competitive landscape is fragmented with a large number of companies providing various types of products and services in different markets and geographic areas. We provide integrated solutions that compete based on total workflow value,

features, quality, service, and flexibility of pricing and deployment options. Companies with which we compete in some contexts may also act as our partners in other contexts, such as large enterprise customer environments .

Certain companies that compete with us across some of our products and solutions are listed below by the market relevant to Avid in which they compete predominantly:

- Broadcast and Media: Belden Inc. (Grass Valley), ChyronHego Corporation, Dalet S.A., Dell Technologies Inc. (EMC Isilon), EVS Corporation, Harmonic Inc., Quantum Corporation, Ross Video Limited, and Vizrt Ltd., among others.
- Audio and Video Post and Professional: Ableton AG, Adobe Systems Incorporated, Apple Inc., AudioTonix Limited, Blackmagic Design Pty Ltd, PreSonus Audio Electronics, Inc., and Yamaha Corporation, among others.

Some of our principal competitors are substantially larger than we are and have greater financial, technical, marketing and other resources than us. For a discussion of these and other risks associated with our competitors, see “Risk Factors” in Item 1A of this Form 10-K.

OPERATIONS

Sales and Services Channels

We market and sell our products and solutions through a combination of direct, indirect and digital sales channels. Our direct sales channel consists of internal sales representatives serving select customers and markets. Our indirect sales channels include global networks of independent distributors, value-added resellers, dealers and retailers. Our digital sales channel is represented by the online Avid Marketplace.

We have significant international operations with offices in 22 countries and the ability to reach over 170 countries through a combination of our direct sales force and resellers. Sales to customers outside the United States accounted for 62% , 64% and 63% , of our total net revenues in 2017 , 2016 and 2015 , respectively. Additional information about the geographic breakdown of our revenues and long-lived assets can be found in Note P to our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Form 10-K. For additional information about risks associated with our international operations, see “Risk Factors” in Item 1A of this Form 10-K.

We generally ship our products shortly after the receipt of an order. However, a high percentage of our revenues has historically been generated in the third month of each fiscal quarter and concentrated in the latter part of that month. Orders that may exist at the end of a quarter and have not been shipped are not recognized as revenues in that quarter and are included in revenue backlog.

Certain orders included in revenue backlog may be reduced, canceled or deferred by our customers. Our revenue backlog, as we define it, consists of firm orders received and includes both (i) orders where the customer has paid in advance of our performance obligations being fulfilled and (ii) orders for future product deliveries or services that have not yet been invoiced by us. The expected timing of the conversion of revenue backlog into revenue is based on current estimates and could change based on a number of factors, including (i) the timing of delivery of products and services, (ii) customer cancellations or change orders, (iii) changes in the estimated period of time Implied Maintenance Release post contract service, or PCS, is provided to customers, or (iv) changes in accounting standards or policies. Implied Maintenance Release PCS, as we define it, is the implicit obligation to make software updates available to customers over a period of time, representing implied post-contract customer support, and is deemed to be a deliverable in each arrangement and accounted for as a separate element. As there is no industry standard definition of revenue backlog, our reported revenue backlog may not be comparable with other companies. Additional information on our revenue backlog can be found in “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations.”

We provide customer care services directly through regional in-house and contracted support centers and major-market field service representatives and indirectly through dealers, value-added resellers and authorized third-party service providers. Depending on the solution, customers may choose from a variety of support offerings, including telephone and online technical support, on-site assistance, hardware replacement and extended warranty, and software upgrades. In addition to

customer care services, we offer a broad array of professional services, including installation, integration, planning and consulting services, and customer training.

Manufacturing and Suppliers

Our manufacturing operations consist primarily of a network of contract manufacturers around the globe to manufacture many of our products, components and subassemblies, and Original Equipment Manufacturers, or OEMs, from whom we purchase finished assemblies. Our products undergo testing and quality assurance at the final assembly stage. In addition to our external manufacturing operations, we also have an internal manufacturing operation consist primarily of configuring into complete systems the products, board sets, subassemblies and components purchased from third parties, and final assembly and testing of some board sets, software, related hardware components and complete systems. We depend on sole-source suppliers for certain key hardware product components and finished goods, including some critical items. Although we have procedures in place to mitigate the risks associated with our sole-sourced suppliers, we cannot be certain that we will be able to obtain sole-sourced components or finished goods from alternative suppliers or that we will be able to do so on commercially reasonable terms without a material impact on our results of operations or financial position. For the risks associated with our use of contractors and sole-source vendors, see “Risk Factors” in Item 1A of this Form 10-K.

Our company-operated manufacturing facilities, primarily for final assembly and testing of certain products, are located in Kfar Saba, Israel, and Dublin, Ireland. Our contract manufacturers and OEMs manufacture our products at a relatively limited number of different facilities located throughout the world and, in most cases, the manufacturing of each of our products is concentrated in one or a few locations. An interruption in manufacturing capabilities at any of these facilities, as a result of equipment failure or other reasons, could reduce, delay or prevent the production of our products. Because some of our manufacturing or our contract manufacturers’ operations are located outside of the United States, including in Israel, Ireland, China, Mexico and Thailand, those manufacturing operations are also subject to additional challenges and risks associated with international operations. For these and other risks associated with our manufacturing operations, see “Risk Factors” in Item 1A of this Form 10-K.

Research and Development

We are committed to delivering best-in-class digital media content-creation solutions that are designed for the unique needs, skills and sophistication levels of our target customer markets as well as a generic media platform for the media industry to host our own as well as our partner solutions. Having helped establish the digital media technology industry, we are building on a 25+ year heritage of innovation and leadership in developing content-creation solutions and platforms. We have research and development, or R&D, operations around the globe. Our R&D efforts are focused on the development of digital media content-creation, distribution and monetization tools as well as the media platform. These tools operate primarily on the Mac and on Windows platforms, whereas the media platform primarily operates on Linux platforms. Our R&D efforts also include highly optimized media storage solutions, standards-based media transfer and media asset management tools, as well as ingest and playout solutions to cover the entire workflow. In addition to our internal R&D efforts, we outsource a significant portion of certain R&D projects to an internationally based partner in Kiev, Ukraine. Our R&D expenditures for 2017, 2016 and 2015 were \$68.2 million, \$81.6 million and \$95.9 million, respectively, which represented 16%, 16% and 19% of our total net revenues, respectively. For the risks associated with our use of partners for R&D projects, see “Risk Factors” in Item 1A of this Form 10-K.

Our company-operated R&D operations are located in: Burlington, Massachusetts; Berkeley, California; Munich, Germany; Kaiserslautern, Germany; Kfar Saba, Israel; Szczecin, Poland; and Montreal, Canada. We also partner with a vendor in Kiev, Ukraine for outsourced R&D services.

Intellectual Property

We regard our software and hardware as proprietary and protect our proprietary interests under the laws of patents, copyrights, trademarks and trade secrets, as well as through contractual provisions.

We have obtained patents and have registered copyrights, trademarks and service marks in the United States and in many foreign countries. At February 8, 2018, we held 125 U.S. patents, with expiration dates through 2037, and had 14 patent applications pending with the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office. We have also registered or applied to register various

trademarks and service marks in the United States and a number of foreign countries, including Avid, Avid Everywhere, MediaCentral, Media Composer, Pro Tools and Sibelius. As a technology company, we regard our patents, copyrights, trademarks, service marks and trade secrets as being among our most valuable assets, together with the innovative skills, technical competence and marketing abilities of our personnel.

Our software is licensed to end users pursuant to shrink-wrap, embedded, click-through or signed license agreements. Our products generally contain features to guard against unauthorized use. Policing unauthorized use of computer software is difficult, and software piracy is a persistent problem for us, as it is for the software industry in general. Although we attempt to protect our intellectual property rights through patents, trademarks, copyrights, licensing arrangements, maintaining certain technology as trade secrets and other measures, there can be no assurance that any patent, trademark, copyright or other intellectual property rights owned by us will not be invalidated, circumvented or challenged, that such intellectual property rights will provide competitive advantages to us, or that any of our pending or future patent applications will be issued with the claims, or the scope of the claims, sought by us, if at all. Others may develop technologies that are similar or superior to our technology, duplicate our technology or design around the patents that we own. In addition, effective patent, copyright and trade secret protection may be unavailable or limited in countries in which we do business or may do business in the future. For these and other risks associated with the protection of our intellectual property, see “Risk Factors” in Item 1A of this Form 10-K.

HISTORY AND EMPLOYEES

Avid was incorporated in Delaware in 1987. We are headquartered in Burlington, Massachusetts, with operations in North America, South America, Europe, the Middle East, Asia and Australia. At December 31, 2017, our worldwide workforce consisted of 1,458 employees and 305 external contractors.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

We make available free of charge on our website, www.avid.com, copies of our Annual Reports on Form 10-K, our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, our Current Reports on Form 8-K and all amendments to those reports as soon as practicable after filing with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC. Additionally, we will provide paper copies of all of these filings free of charge upon request. Alternatively, these reports can be accessed at the SEC’s Internet website at www.sec.gov. The information contained on our web site shall not be deemed incorporated by reference in any filing under the Securities Act or the Exchange Act.

ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS

You should carefully consider the risks and uncertainties described below, in addition to the other information included or incorporated by reference in this Form 10-K, before making an investment decision regarding our common stock. If any of the following risks were to actually occur, our business, financial condition or operating results would likely suffer, possibly materially, the trading price of our common stock could decline, and you could lose part or all of your investment. Additional risks and uncertainties that we are unaware of, or that we currently believe are not material, may also become important factors that adversely affect our business.

Risks Related to Our Business and Industry

The rapid evolution of the media industry is changing our customers' needs, businesses and revenue models, and if we cannot anticipate or adapt quickly, our business will be harmed.

The media industry has rapidly and dramatically transformed over the past decade, and it is continuing to do so as a result of free content, minimal entry costs for creation and distribution, and expanded use of mobile devices. As a result, our traditional customers' needs, businesses and revenue models are changing, often in ways that deviate from our traditional core strengths and bases. If we cannot anticipate these changes or adapt to them quickly, our business will be harmed. For example, our customers have to address the increasing digitization of the media industry, which requires the creation of a more seamless value chain between content creation and monetization. Because of the consumerization of the media industry, there is more pressure to create media that can be repurposed in a variety of ways in an efficient manner. As a result of these industry changes, traditional advertising channels are also facing competition from web and mobile platforms, and diminished revenues from traditional advertising could cause some customers' budgets for the purchase of our solutions to decline; this may be particularly true among local television stations, which in the past have been an important customer industry for us. Additionally, our customers may seek to pool or share facilities and resources with others in their industry and engage with providers of software as a service.

The ongoing rapid evolution of the media industry may reduce demand for some of our existing products and services. New or non-traditional competitors may arise or adapt in response to this evolution of the media industry, which could create downward price pressure on our products and solutions and reduce our market share and revenue opportunities.

If we are unable to successfully execute on our strategy, our business, financial condition, and results of operations could be adversely affected.

The ongoing implementation of our strategy involves a number of risks and uncertainties. For example, we may need additional capital for research and development and other initiatives that we may not have access to on reasonable terms or at all. Additionally, our strategy requires us to develop expertise in new areas and establish new competencies either through talent acquisition or internal development, which we may not be able to successfully achieve. There is a risk that not all of our strategic plans will deliver the expected benefits within the anticipated time frames, or at all. Furthermore, as a part of our strategy, we are identifying and executing on opportunities to reduce operating costs. If we are unable to successfully execute on our strategy, our business, financial condition and results of operations could be adversely affected.

Our increased emphasis on a cloud strategy may give rise to risks that could harm our business.

We are devoting significant resources to the development of cloud-based technologies and service offerings where we have a limited operating history. Our cloud strategy requires continued investment in product development and cloud operations, as well as a change in the way we price and deliver our products. Many of our competitors may have advantages over us due to their larger presence, larger developer network, deeper experience in the cloud-based computing market, and greater sales and marketing resources. It is uncertain whether our cloud-based strategies will prove successful, or whether we will be able to develop the infrastructure and business models more quickly than our competitors. Our cloud strategy may give rise to a number of risks, including the following:

- If new or current customers desire only perpetual licenses, we may not be successful in selling subscriptions.
- Although we intend to support our perpetual license business, the increased emphasis on a cloud strategy may raise concerns among our installed customer base.
- We may be unsuccessful in achieving our target pricing.

- Our revenues might decline over the short or long term as a result of this strategy.
- Our relationships with existing partners that resell perpetual licenses may be damaged.
- We may incur costs at a higher than forecasted rate as we enhance and expand our cloud operations.

We operate in highly competitive markets, and our competitors may be able to draw upon a greater depth and breadth of resources than those available to us.

We operate in highly competitive markets characterized by pressure to innovate, expand feature sets and functionality, accelerate new product releases and reduce prices. Markets for certain of our products also have limited barriers to entry. Many of the markets in which we operate are fragmented, which creates an additional risk of consolidation among our competitors, resulting in fewer, more effective competitors. Customers consider many factors when evaluating our products relative to those of our competitors, including innovation, ease of use, price, feature sets, functionality, reliability, performance, reputation, and training and support, and we may not compare favorably against our competitors in all respects. Some of our current and potential competitors have longer operating histories, greater brand recognition and substantially greater financial, technical, marketing, distribution and support resources than we do. As a result, our competitors may be able to deliver greater innovation, respond more quickly to new or emerging technologies and changes in market demand, devote more resources to the development, marketing and sale of their products, successfully expand into emerging and other international markets, or price their products more aggressively than we can.

If our competitors are more successful than we are in developing products, or in attracting and retaining customers, our financial condition and operating results could be adversely affected.

Our success depends in significant part on our ability to provide innovative products and solutions in response to dynamic and rapidly evolving market demand.

To succeed in our market, we must deliver innovative products and solutions. Innovation requires both that we accurately predict future market trends and customer expectations, and that we quickly adapt our development efforts in response. We also have the challenge of protecting our product roadmap and new product initiatives from leaks to competitors that might reduce or eliminate any innovative edge that we seek to gain. Predicting market trends is difficult, as our market is dynamic and rapidly evolving. Additionally, given the complex, sophisticated nature of our solutions and our typically lengthy product development cycles, we may not be able to rapidly change our product direction or strategic course. If we are unable to accurately predict market trends or adapt to evolving market conditions, our ability to capture customer demand will suffer and our market reputation and financial performance will be negatively affected. Even to the extent we make accurate predictions and possess the requisite flexibility to adapt, we may be able to pursue only some of the possible innovations, due to limited resources. Our success, therefore, further depends on our ability to identify and focus on the most promising innovations.

Our success depends on our ability to manage a number of risks associated with new products that we introduce, including timely and successful product launch, market acceptance, and the availability of products in appropriate locations, quantities and costs to meet demand. There can be no assurance that our efforts will be successful in the near future, or at all, or that our competitors will not take significant market share in similar efforts. If we fail to develop new products and to manage new product introductions and transitions properly, our financial condition and operating results could be harmed.

We may not be able to achieve the efficiencies, savings and other benefits anticipated from our cost reduction, margin improvement and other business optimization initiatives.

We are continually reviewing and implementing programs throughout the company to reduce costs, increase efficiencies and enhance our business. We have in the past undertaken, and expect to continue to undertake, various restructuring activities and cost reduction initiatives in an effort to better align our organizational structure and costs with our strategy. For example, in February 2016 we committed to a restructuring plan that encompassed a series of actions intended to more efficiently operate in a leaner, and more directed cost structure. The actions included reductions in our workforce, facility consolidation, transferring resources to lower cost regions and reducing other third-party services costs.

In connection with these activities, we may experience a disruption in our ability to perform functions important to our strategy. Unexpected delays, increased costs, challenges with adapting our internal control environment to a new organizational structure,

inability to retain and motivate employees, or other challenges arising from these initiatives could adversely affect our ability to realize the anticipated savings or other intended benefits of these activities and could have a material adverse impact on our financial condition and operating results.

Certain of our enterprise offerings have long and complex sales cycles.

With our transition to leveraging the Avid MediaCentral platform in our sales process, we have experienced an elongation of the sales cycle for some of our enterprise offerings. The longevity and complexity in these sales cycles is due to a number of factors, including:

- the need for our sales representatives to educate customers about the uses and benefits of our products and services, including technical capabilities, security features, potential cost savings and return on investment, which are made available in large-scale deployments;
- the desire of large and medium size organizations to undertake significant evaluation processes to determine their technology requirements prior to making information technology expenditures;
- the negotiation of large, complex, enterprise-wide contracts, as often required by our and our customers' business and legal representatives;
- the need for our customers to obtain requisition approvals from various decision makers within their organizations; and
- customer budget constraints, economic conditions and unplanned administrative delays.

We spend substantial time and money on our sales efforts without any assurance that potential customers will ultimately purchase our solutions. As we target our sales efforts at larger enterprise customers, these trends are expected to continue. Additionally, our enterprise sales pattern has historically been uneven, with a higher percentage of a quarter's total sales occurring during the final weeks of each quarter, as is common in our industry. Our long sales cycle for these products makes it difficult to predict when a given sales cycle will close.

Subscription offerings create risks related to the timing of revenue recognition.

We sell an increasing portion of our products based on a subscription model. Although the subscription model is designed to increase the number of customers who purchase our products and services on a recurring basis, and create a more predictable revenue stream, it creates certain risks and uncertainties related to the timing of revenue recognition and potential reductions in cash flows. A portion of the subscription-based revenue we report each quarter results from the recognition of deferred revenue relating to subscription agreements entered into during previous quarters. A decline in new or renewed subscriptions in any period may not be immediately reflected in our reported financial results for that period but may result in a decline in our revenue in future quarters. If we were to experience significant downturns in subscription sales and renewal rates, our reported financial results might not reflect such downturns until future periods. Our subscription model could also make it difficult for us to rapidly increase our revenues from subscription-based services through additional sales in any period, as revenue from new customers will be recognized over the applicable subscription term. Further, any increases in sales under our subscription sales model could result in decreased revenues over the short term if they are offset by a decline in sales from perpetual license customers. If any of our assumptions about revenue from our new businesses or our addition of a subscription-based model prove incorrect, our actual results may differ materially from those anticipated, estimated or projected. We may be unable to predict subscription renewal rates and the impact these rates may have on our future revenue and operating results.

If our customers do not renew their subscriptions for our services or if they renew on terms that are less favorable to us, our revenues may decline

We sell Pro Tools, Media Composer and Sibelius on a subscription basis pursuant to service agreements that are generally month-to-month or one year in length, and we intend to expand our subscription offerings to other products. Although many of our service and subscription agreements contain automatic renewal terms, our customers have no obligation to renew their subscriptions for our services after the expiration of their initial subscription period, and some customers elect not to renew. These subscriptions may not be renewed at the same or a higher level of service, for the same number of seats/licenses or for the same duration of time, or at all. Moreover, under certain circumstances, some of our customers have the right to cancel their service agreements prior to the expiration of the terms of their agreements. We may not be able to accurately predict future customer

renewal rates. Our customers' renewal rates may decline or fluctuate as a result of a number of factors, including their level of satisfaction with our services, the reliability of our subscription services, the prices of our services, the perceived information security of our systems and services, the prices of services offered by our competitors, mergers and acquisitions affecting our customer base, reductions in our customers' spending levels, or declines in customer activity as a result of economic downturns or uncertainty in financial markets. If our customers do not renew their subscriptions for our services or if they renew on terms less favorable to us, our revenues may decline. Our future growth is also affected by our ability to sell additional features and services to our current customers, which depends on a number of factors, including customers' satisfaction with our products and services, the prices of our offerings and general economic conditions. If our efforts to cross-sell and upsell to our customers are unsuccessful, the rate at which our business grows may decline.

We obtain hardware product components and finished goods under sole-source supply arrangements, and any disruptions to these arrangements could jeopardize the manufacturing or distribution of certain of our hardware products.

Although we generally prefer to establish multi-source supply arrangements for our hardware product components and finished goods, multi-source arrangements are not always possible or cost-effective. We consequently depend on sole-source suppliers for certain hardware product components and finished goods, including some critical items. We do not generally carry significant inventories of, and may not in all cases have guaranteed supply arrangements for, these sole-sourced items. If any of our sole-source suppliers were to cease, suspend or otherwise limit production or shipment (due to, among other things, macroeconomic events, political crises or natural or environmental disasters or other occurrences), terminate our agreements or adversely modify supply terms or pricing, our ability to manufacture, distribute and service our products would be impaired and our business could be significantly harmed. We may not be able to obtain sole-sourced components or finished goods, or acceptable substitutes, from alternative suppliers or on commercially reasonable terms. If we are forced to change sole source suppliers, due to a contract termination or other production cessation, it may take a significant amount of time and expenses to obtain substitute suppliers, during which time we may experience significant impact on our inventory, which may adversely impact our working capital, liquidity, results of operations or financial position. We may also be required to expend significant development resources to redesign our products to work around the exclusion of any sole-sourced component or accommodate the inclusion of any substitute component. Although we have procedures in place to mitigate the risks associated with our sole-sourced suppliers, we cannot be certain that we will be able to obtain sole-sourced components or finished goods from alternative suppliers or that we will be able to do so on commercially reasonable terms without a material impact on our results of operations or financial position.

Our international operations expose us to legal, regulatory and other risks that we may not face in the United States.

We derive more than half of our revenues from customers outside of the United States, and we rely on foreign contractors for the supply and manufacture of many of our products. For example, sales to customers outside the United States accounted for 62% , 64% and 63% , of our total net revenues in 2017 , 2016 and 2015 , respectively. We also conduct significant research and development activities overseas, including through third-party development vendors. For example, a portion of our research and development is outsourced to contractors operating in Kiev, Ukraine, we have customer support activities in the Philippines, and we have operations in Poland and Israel as a result of our 2015 acquisition of Orad.

Our international operations are subject to a variety of risks that we may not face in the United States, including:

- the financial and administrative burdens associated with compliance with myriad environmental, tax and export laws, as well as other business regulations in foreign jurisdictions, including high compliance costs, inconsistencies among jurisdictions, and a lack of administrative or judicial interpretative guidance;
- reduced or varied protection for intellectual property rights in some countries;
- regional economic downturns;
- economic, social and political instability abroad and international security concerns in general and the risk of war;
- fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates;
- longer collection cycles for accounts receivable payment cycles and difficulties in enforcing contracts;
- difficulties in managing and staffing international implementations and operations, and executing our business strategy internationally;

- potentially adverse tax consequences, including the complexities of foreign value added or other tax systems and restrictions on the repatriation of earnings;
- increased financial accounting and reporting burdens and complexities;
- difficulties in maintaining effective internal controls over financial reporting and disclosure controls;
- costs and delays associated with developing products in multiple languages; and
- foreign exchange controls that may prevent or limit our ability to repatriate income earned in foreign markets.

We may not be successful in developing, implementing or maintaining policies and strategies that will be effective in managing the varying risks in each country where we do business. Our failure to manage these risks successfully, including developing appropriate contingency plans for our outsourced research and development work, could harm our international operations, reduce our international sales and increase our costs, thus adversely affecting our business, operating results and financial condition.

We operate in many different jurisdictions and we could be adversely affected by violations of the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, the U.K. Bribery Act and similar foreign anti-corruption laws.

The FCPA and similar foreign anti-corruption laws generally prohibit companies and their intermediaries from offering, promising, authorizing, or making payments to foreign officials for the purpose of influencing any act or decision of such official in his or her official capacity, inducing the official to do any act in violation of his or her lawful duty, or to secure any improper advantage in obtaining or retaining business. Recent years have seen a substantial increase in the global enforcement of anti-corruption laws, with more frequent voluntary self-disclosures by companies, aggressive investigations and enforcement proceedings by both the DOJ and the SEC resulting in record fines and penalties, increased enforcement activity by non-U.S. regulators, and increases in criminal and civil proceedings brought against companies and individuals.

We operate in a number of countries that are recognized as having governmental corruption problems to some degree and where local customs and practices may not foster strict compliance with anti-corruption laws, including China. Our continued operation and expansion outside the United States could increase the risk of such violations in the future. Although we have policies that mandate compliance with these anti-corruption laws and require training, we cannot assure you that these policies and procedures will protect us from unauthorized reckless or criminal acts committed by our employees or agents. In the event that we believe or have reason to believe that our employees or agents have or may have violated applicable anti-corruption laws, including the FCPA, we may be required to investigate or have outside counsel investigate the relevant facts and circumstances, which can be expensive and require significant time and attention from senior management. Violations of these laws may result in severe criminal or civil sanctions, which could disrupt our business and result in a material adverse effect on our reputation, business, results of operations or financial condition.

Failure of our information systems or breaches of data security could impact our business.

Our systems and processes involve the storage and transmission of proprietary information and sensitive or confidential data, including personal information of employees, customers and others. In addition, we rely on information systems controlled by third parties. Information system failures, network disruptions and system and data security breaches, manipulation, destruction or leakage, whether intentional or accidental, could harm our ability to conduct our business, impede development, manufacture or shipment of products, interrupt or delay processing of transactions and reporting financial results or result in the unintentional disclosure of proprietary, sensitive or confidential information. With our development of Avid MediaCentral Platform, public and private marketplaces and cloud-based offerings, our and our customer's data and financial and proprietary information could become more susceptible to such failures and data breaches. Additionally, significant or repeated reductions in the performance, reliability, security or availability of our information systems and network infrastructure could significantly harm our brand and reputation and ability to attract and retain existing and potential users, customers, advertisers and content providers.

Information system failures or unauthorized access could be caused by our failure to adequately maintain and enhance our systems and networks, external theft or attack, misconduct by our employees, contractors, or vendors, or many other causes such as power failures, earthquake, fire or other natural disasters. Such information system failures or unauthorized access could expose us, our customers or the individuals affected to a risk of loss or misuse of this information, resulting in litigation and potential liability for us. In addition, we could incur substantial remediation costs, including costs associated with repairing our

information systems, implementing further data protection measures, engaging third-party experts and consultants, and increased insurance premiums.

Additionally, our cloud-based offerings depend on the availability and proper functioning of certain third-party services, including but not limited to cloud provider, database management, backup, monitoring and logging services. The failure or improper functioning of these third party services could lead to outages, security breaches and data losses, including loss of customer creative assets. If third-party services become unavailable, we may need to expend considerable resources identifying and integrating alternate providers.

We rely to a significant extent on manufacturing and hardware development vendors with operations in China and Thailand. This may reduce our control over the manufacturing activities, create uncertainty with respect to intended cost savings and expose our proprietary assets to greater risk of misappropriation. Changes to these vendor relationships may result in delays or disruptions that could harm our business.

We rely to a significant extent on vendors for the development and manufacture of certain of our hardware products, primarily in China and Thailand. These relationships provide us with more flexible resource capabilities, access to global talent and cost savings, but also expose us to risks that may not exist or may be less pronounced with respect to our internal operations. We are able to exercise only limited oversight of our contractors, including with respect to their engineering and manufacturing processes, resource allocations, delivery schedules, security procedures and quality control. Language, cultural and time zone differences complicate effective management of contractors that are located abroad. Additionally, competition for talent in certain locations may lead to high turnover rates that disrupt development or manufacturing continuity. The manufacturers we use also manufacture products for other companies, including our competitors. Our contractors could choose to prioritize capacity for other users, increase the prices they charge us or reduce or eliminate deliveries to us, which could have a material adverse effect on our business. Pricing terms offered by contractors may be highly variable over time reflecting, among other things, order volume, local inflation and exchange rates. For example, during the past few years, including in 2017, most of our outsourced manufacturers have been in China, where the cost of manufacturing has been increasing and labor unrest and turn-over rates at manufacturers have been on the rise. Some of our contractor relationships are based on contract, while others operate on a purchase order basis, where we do not have the benefit of written protections with respect to pricing or other critical terms.

Many of our contractors require access to our intellectual property and our confidential and proprietary information to perform their services. Protection of these assets in certain non-U.S. jurisdictions may be less robust than in the United States. We must rely on policies and procedures we have instituted with our contractors and certain confidentiality and contractual provisions in our written agreements, to the extent they exist, for protection. These safeguards may be inadequate to prevent breaches. If a breach were to occur, available legal or other remedies may be limited or otherwise insufficient to compensate us for any resulting damages.

Furthermore, if one of our international vendors were, for any reason, to cease or experience significant disruptions in its operations, among others as a result of political unrest, we might be unable to replace it on a timely basis with a comparably priced provider. We would also have to expend time and resources to train any new development or manufacturing vendor. If any of the vendors were to suffer an interruption in its business, or experience delays, disruptions or quality control problems in development or manufacturing operations, or if we had to change development or manufacturing vendors, our ability to provide services to our customers would be delayed and our business, operating results and financial condition would be adversely affected.

We depend on the availability and proper functioning of certain third-party technology that we incorporate into or bundle with our products. Third-party technology may include defects or errors that could adversely affect the performance of our products. If third-party technology becomes unavailable, we may need to expend considerable resources integrating alternative third-party technology or developing our own substitute technology.

The profit margin for each of our products depends in part on the royalty, license and purchase fees we pay in connection with third-party technology which we license for incorporation into our bundling with our products. To the extent we add additional third-party technology to our products and we are unable to offset associated costs, our profit margins may decline and our operating results may suffer. In addition to cost implications, third-party technology may include defects or errors that could adversely affect the performance of our products, which may harm our market reputation or adversely affect our product sales. Third-party technology may also include certain open source software code that if used in combination with our own software

may jeopardize our intellectual property rights or limit our ability to sell through certain sales channels. If any third-party technology license expires, is terminated or ceases to be available on commercially reasonable terms, we may be required to expend considerable resources integrating alternative third-party technology or developing our own substitute technology. In the interim, sales of our products may be delayed or suspended or we may be forced to distribute our products with reduced feature sets or functionality.

Lengthy procurement lead times and unpredictable life cycles and customer demand for some of our products may result in significant inventory risks.

With respect to many of our products, particularly our audio products, we must procure component parts and build finished inventory far in advance of product shipments. Certain of these products may have unpredictable life cycles and encounter rapid technological obsolescence as a result of dynamic market conditions. We procure product components and build inventory based upon our forecasts of product life cycle and customer demand. If we are unable to accurately forecast product life cycle and customer demand or unable to manage our inventory levels in response to shifts in customer demand, the result may be insufficient, excess or obsolete product inventory. Insufficient product inventory may impair our ability to fulfill product orders and negatively affect our revenues, while excess or obsolete inventory may require a write-down on products and components to their net realizable value, which would negatively affect our results of operations.

Our revenues and operating results depend significantly on our third-party reseller and distribution channels. Our failure to adequately manage our distribution channels for our products and services could adversely affect our revenues and gross margins and therefore our profitability.

We distribute many of our products indirectly through third-party resellers and distributors. We also distribute products directly to end-user customers. Successfully managing the interaction of our direct and indirect channel efforts to reach various potential customer industries for our products and services is a complex process. For example, in response to our direct sales strategies or for other business reasons, our current resellers and distributors may from time to time choose to resell our competitors' products in addition to, or in place of, ours. Moreover, since each distribution method has distinct risks and gross margins, our failure to identify and implement the most advantageous balance in the delivery model for our products and services could adversely affect our revenues and gross margins and therefore our profitability.

In addition, some of our resellers and distributors have rights of return, as well as inventory stock rotation and price protection. Accordingly, reserves for estimated returns and exchanges, and credits for price protection, are recorded as a reduction of revenues upon applicable product shipment, and are based upon our historical experience. Our reliance upon indirect distribution methods may reduce visibility to demand and pricing issues, and therefore make forecasting more difficult and, to the extent that returns exceed estimates, our revenues and operating results may be adversely affected.

Our products may experience quality issues that could negatively impact our customer relationships, our market reputation and our operating results.

Our software products, as is typical of sophisticated, complex software, occasionally include coding defects or errors (commonly referred to as "bugs"), which in some cases may interfere with or impair a customer's ability to operate or use the software. Similarly, our hardware products could include design or manufacturing defects that could cause them to malfunction. The quality control measures we use are not designed or intended to detect and remedy all defects. The time and resources available to devote to quality control measures are, in part, dependent on other business considerations, such as meeting customer expectations with respect to release schedules. Any product defects could result in loss of customers or revenues, delays in revenue recognition, increased product returns, damage to our market reputation and significant warranty or other expense and could have a material adverse impact on our financial condition and operating results.

Our success depends in part on our ability to hire and retain competent and skilled management and technical, sales and other personnel.

We are dependent on the continued service and performance of our management team and key technical, sales and other personnel and our success will depend in part on our ability to retain these employees in a competitive job market. If we fail to appropriately match the skill sets of our employees to our needs, we may incur increased costs or experience challenges with execution of our strategic plan. We rely on cash bonuses and equity awards as significant compensation and retention tools for key personnel. In

addition to compensation, we seek to foster an innovative work culture to retain employees. If we fail to maintain an inclusive and discrimination free workplace there is a risk that we may not be able to retain our employees. We also rely on the attractiveness of developing technology for the film, television and music industries as a means of retention. We continue to take actions to transform strategically, operationally and culturally and to achieve cost savings, all with the intent to drive improved operating performance both in the U.S. and internationally.

Our competitors may in some instances be able to offer a more established or more dynamic work environment, higher compensation or more opportunities to work with cutting-edge technology than we can. If we are unable to retain our key personnel or appropriately match skill sets with our needs, we would be required to expend significant time and financial resources to identify and hire new qualified personnel and to transfer significant internal historical knowledge, which might significantly delay or prevent the achievement of our business objectives.

Our intellectual property and trade secrets are valuable assets that may be subject to third-party infringement and misappropriation.

As a technology company, our intellectual property and trade secrets are among our most valuable assets. Infringement or misappropriation of these assets can result in lost revenues, and thereby ultimately reduce their value. We rely on a combination of patent, copyright, trademark and trade secret laws, as well as confidentiality procedures, contractual provisions and anti-piracy technology in certain of our products to protect our intellectual property and trade secrets. Most of these tools require vigilant monitoring of competitor and other third-party activities and of end-user usage of our products to be effective. These tools may not provide adequate protection in all instances, may be subject to circumvention, or may require a vigilance that in some cases exceeds our capabilities or resources. Additionally, our business model is increasingly focused on software products and, as we offer more software products, our revenues may be more vulnerable to loss through piracy, which could result in revenue losses. While we may seek to engage with those potentially infringing our intellectual property to negotiate a license for use, we also may seek legal recourse, which could be costly. The legal regimes of certain foreign jurisdictions in which we operate, may not protect our intellectual property or trade secrets to the same extent as do the laws of the United States. If our intellectual property or trade secrets are misappropriated in foreign jurisdictions, we may be without adequate remedies to address these issues. Regardless of jurisdiction, assuming legal protection exists and infringement or misappropriation is detected, any enforcement action that we may pursue could be costly and time-consuming, the outcome will be uncertain, and the alleged offender in some cases may seek to have our intellectual property rights invalidated. If we are unable to protect our intellectual property and trade secrets, our business could be harmed.

Our results could be materially adversely affected if we are accused of, or found to be, infringing third parties' intellectual property rights.

Because of technological change in our industry, extensive and sometimes uncertain patent coverage, and the rapid issuance of new patents, it is possible that certain of our products or business methods may infringe the patents or other intellectual property rights of third parties. Companies in the technology industry own large numbers of patents, copyrights, trademarks and trade secrets and frequently enter into litigation based on allegations of infringement or other violations of intellectual property rights. Our technologies may not be able to withstand any third-party claims or rights against their use. We have received claims, and are subject to litigation alleging, that we infringe patents owned by third parties, and we may in the future be subject to such claims and litigation. Regardless of the scope or validity of such patents, or the merits of any patent claims by potential or actual litigants, we could incur substantial costs in defending intellectual property claims and litigation, and such claims and litigation could distract management's attention from normal business operations. In addition, we provide indemnification provisions in agreements with certain customers covering potential claims by third parties of intellectual property infringement. These agreements generally provide that we will indemnify customers for losses incurred in connection with an infringement claim brought by a third party with respect to our products, and we have received claims for such indemnification. The results of any intellectual property litigation to which we are, or may become, a party, or for which we are required to provide indemnification, may require us to:

- cease selling or using products or services that incorporate the challenged intellectual property;
- make substantial payments for legal fees, settlement payments or other costs or damages;
- obtain a license, which may not be available on reasonable terms, to sell or use the relevant technology, which such license could require royalties that would significantly increase our cost of goods sold; or

- redesign products or services to avoid infringement, where such redesign could involve significant costs and result in delayed and/or reduced sales of the affected products.

If we are unable to sell our professional products through retail sales channels, our operating results could be adversely affected.

We continue to have a presence in retail because our professional-level products are offered through specialty retail stores. Our ability to continue to sell our professional products through certain retail sales channels may be impaired because we will sell fewer types of products and fewer units through those channels, impacting retailers' willingness to carry our professional-level products.

Potential acquisitions could be difficult to consummate and integrate into our operations, and they and investment transactions could disrupt our business, dilute stockholder value or impair our financial results.

As part of our business strategy, from time to time we may seek to grow our business through acquisitions of or investments in new or complementary businesses, technologies or products that we believe can improve our ability to compete in our existing customer markets or allow us to enter new markets. The potential risks associated with acquisitions and investment transactions include, but are not limited to:

- failure to realize anticipated returns on investment, cost savings and synergies;
- difficulty in assimilating the operations, policies and personnel of the acquired company;
- unanticipated costs associated with acquisitions;
- challenges in combining product offerings and entering into new markets in which we may not have experience;
- distraction of management's attention from normal business operations;
- potential loss of key employees of the acquired company;
- difficulty implementing effective internal controls over financial reporting and disclosure controls and procedures;
- impairment of relationships with customers or suppliers;
- possibility of incurring impairment losses related to goodwill and intangible assets; and
- unidentified issues not discovered in due diligence, which may include product quality issues or legal or other contingencies.

In order to complete an acquisition or investment transaction, we may need to obtain financing, including through borrowings or the issuance of debt or equity securities. This could potentially dilute existing stockholders. We may borrow to finance an acquisition, and the amount and terms of any potential future acquisition-related borrowings, as well as other factors, could adversely affect our liquidity and financial condition, and potentially our credit ratings. We may not be able to consummate such financings on commercially reasonable terms, or at all, in which case our ability to complete desired acquisitions or investments and to implement our business strategy, and as a result our financial results, may be materially impaired. In addition, business combinations and investment transactions could impact our effective tax rate. We may experience risks relating to the challenges and costs of closing a business combination or investment transaction and the risk that an announced business combination or investment transaction may not close. As a result, any completed, pending or future transactions may contribute to financial results that differ from the investment community's expectations in a given quarter.

Unanticipated changes in our tax provisions, the adoption of new tax legislation or exposure to additional tax liabilities could affect our profitability.

We are subject to income and other taxes in the United States and numerous foreign jurisdictions. Our tax liabilities are affected by the amounts we charge for inventory, services, licenses and other items in intercompany transactions. We are also subject to ongoing tax audits in various jurisdictions. Tax authorities may disagree with our intercompany charges, cross-jurisdictional transfer pricing or other matters and assess additional taxes. We regularly assess the likely outcomes of these audits in order to determine the appropriateness of our tax provision. However, there can be no assurance that we will accurately predict the outcomes of these audits, and the amounts ultimately paid upon the resolution of an audit could be materially different from the amounts previously included in our income tax expense and therefore, could have a material impact on our tax provision, net income and cash flows. In addition, our tax provision in the future could be adversely affected by changes to our operating structure, changes in the mix of earnings in countries with differing statutory tax rates, changes in the valuation of deferred tax assets and liabilities, changes in tax laws - including the recently enacted U.S. tax reform on December 22, 2017 commonly known as the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act, or TCJA, and the discovery of new information in the course of our tax return preparation process.

We may be subject to litigation, which, if adversely determined, could harm our business and operating results.

The costs of defending litigation, whether in cash expenses or in management time, could harm our business and materially and adversely affect our operating results and cash flows. An unfavorable outcome in any litigation matter could require that we pay substantial damages, or, in connection with any intellectual property infringement claims, could require that we pay ongoing royalty payments or prohibit us from selling certain of our products. In addition, we may decide to settle any litigation, which could cause us to incur significant settlement costs. A settlement or an unfavorable outcome on any litigation matter could have a material and adverse effect on our business, operating results, financial condition and cash flows.

We and certain of our officers have been named in class action lawsuits related to our disclosure surrounding the level of implementation of our Avid NEXIS solution product offerings, which could be expensive and could damage our business.

We and certain of our executive officers have been named in class action lawsuits relating to our disclosure surrounding the level of implementation of our Avid NEXIS solution product offerings. The pending litigation, and any future litigation or action that may be filed against us, our current or former directors or officers may be time consuming and expensive, and may distract management from the conduct of our business. Any such litigation or action could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, and results of operations, and may expose us to costly indemnification obligations to current or former officers, directors, or other personnel, regardless of the outcome of such matter.

A natural disaster or catastrophic event may significantly limit our ability to conduct business as normal and harm our business.

Our operations, and the operations of our customers, are vulnerable to interruptions by natural disasters and catastrophic events. For example, we operate a complex, geographically dispersed business, which includes significant personnel, customers and facilities in California near major earthquake fault lines. We may not be able to protect our company from such catastrophic events and we are predominantly uninsured for business continuity losses and disruptions caused by catastrophic events. Disruption or failure of our or our customers' networks or systems, or injury or damage to either parties' personnel or physical infrastructure, caused by a natural disaster, public health crisis, terrorism, cyber attack, act of war or other catastrophic event may significantly limit our or our customers' ability to conduct business as normal, including our ability to communicate and transact with customers, suppliers, distributors and resellers, which may negatively affect our revenues and operating results. Additionally, a natural disaster or catastrophic event could cause us or our customers to suspend all or a portion of operations for a significant period of time, result in a permanent loss of resources, and require the relocation of personnel and material to alternate facilities that may not be available or adequate. Such an event could also cause an indirect economic impact on our customers, which could impact our customers' purchasing decisions and reduce demand for our products and services. A prolonged disruption of our business could also damage our reputation, particularly among our global news organization customers who are likely to require our solutions and support during such time. Any of these factors could cause a material adverse impact on our financial condition and operating results.

Economic conditions and regulatory changes leading up to and following the United Kingdom’s likely exit from the European Union could have a material adverse effect on our business and results of operations.

In June 2016, voters in the United Kingdom, or U.K., approved the country’s exit from the European Union, and the U.K. government has commenced the legal process of leaving the European Union, typically referred to as “Brexit.” While the full effects of Brexit will not be known for some time, Brexit could cause disruptions to, and create uncertainty surrounding, our business and results of operations. The most immediate effect of the referendum, and expected Brexit, has been significant volatility in global equity and debt markets and currency exchange rate fluctuations. Ongoing global market volatility and a deterioration in economic conditions due to uncertainty surrounding Brexit, could significantly disrupt the markets in which we operate and lead our customers to closely monitor their costs and delay capital spending decisions.

Additionally, the referendum and expected Brexit resulted in the immediate strengthening of the U.S. dollar against foreign currencies in which we conduct business. Although this strengthening has been somewhat ameliorated by the British Government’s stated desire to accomplish a transitional exit, because we translate revenue denominated in foreign currency into U.S. dollars for our financial statements, during periods of a strengthening U.S. Dollar, our reported revenue from foreign operations is reduced.

The effects of Brexit will depend on any agreements the U.K. makes to retain access to E.U. markets, either during a transitional period or more permanently. The measures could potentially disrupt the markets we serve and may cause us to lose customers and employees. In addition, Brexit could lead to legal uncertainty and potentially divergent national laws and regulations as the U.K. determines which E.U. laws to replace or replicate.

Any of these effects of Brexit could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Risks Related to Our Liquidity and Financial Performance

If we are not able to generate and maintain adequate liquidity our ability to operate our business could be adversely affected.

Generating and maintaining adequate liquidity is important to our business operations. We meet our liquidity needs primarily through cash generated by operations, supplemented from time to time with the proceeds of long-term debt and borrowings under our Credit Facility. We have the ability to borrow up to \$10.0 million under the Credit Facility. We have also undertaken significant cost cutting measures, including, for example, pursuant to the restructuring plan we announced in February 2016, and we may take additional measures to further improve our liquidity. Significant fluctuations in our cash balances could harm our ability to meet our immediate liquidity needs, impair our capacity to react to sudden or unexpected contractions or growth in our business, reduce our ability to withstand a sustained period of economic crisis, and impair our ability to compete with competitors with greater financial resources. In addition, fluctuations in our cash balances could cause us to draw on our Credit Facility and therefore reduce available funds under the Credit Facility (see “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations - Liquidity and Capital Resources” in Item 7 of this Form 10-K). If we are unable to generate sufficient cash flow or our borrowings are not sufficient, our liquidity may significantly decrease, which could have an adverse effect on our business.

Restrictions in the Financing Agreement may limit our activities.

The Financing Agreement contains restrictive covenants that limit our ability to engage in activities that could otherwise benefit us, including, among other things, limitations on our ability to make investments, incur additional indebtedness, issue equity, sell assets, pay dividends and make other restricted payments, and create liens. We are also required to comply on an ongoing basis with certain financial covenants, including a maximum leverage ratio and an annual limit on the amount of our capital expenditures. Our ability to comply with these restrictions and covenants in the future is uncertain and could be affected by the levels of our cash flows from operations and events or circumstances beyond our control. Failure to comply with any of these restrictions or covenants may result in an event of default under the Financing Agreement, which could permit acceleration of the outstanding indebtedness under the Financing Agreement and require us to repay such indebtedness before its scheduled due date. Certain events of default under the Financing Agreement may also give rise to a default under our convertible notes due 2020 or other future indebtedness. If an event of default were to occur, we might not have sufficient funds available to make the payments

required. If we are unable to repay amounts owed, our lenders may be entitled to foreclose on and sell substantially all of our assets, which secure our borrowings under the Financing Agreement.

Our substantial indebtedness could adversely affect our business, cash flow and results of operations.

As of December 31, 2017 we had \$204 million of long-term indebtedness, including the Notes and borrowings under the Financing Agreement. This substantial level of indebtedness may:

- require us to dedicate a greater percentage of our cash flow from operations to payments on our debt, thereby reducing the availability of cash flow to fund capital expenditures, pursue other acquisitions or investments and use for general corporate purposes;
- increase our vulnerability to general adverse economic conditions, including increases in interest rates with respect to borrowings under the Financing Agreement that bear interest at variable rates or when our indebtedness is being refinanced;
- limit our ability to obtain additional financing; and
- limit our flexibility in planning for, or reacting to, changes in or challenges relating to our business and industry, creating competitive disadvantages compared to other competitors with lower debt levels and borrowing costs.

We cannot make any assurance that our cash flow from operations, combined with any additional borrowings available to us, will be sufficient to enable us to repay our indebtedness, or to fund other liquidity needs. We may incur additional indebtedness in the future, which could cause these risks to intensify. If we are unable to generate sufficient cash flows to repay indebtedness when due or to fund our other liquidity needs, we may be required to adopt one or more alternatives, such as selling assets, restructuring debt or obtaining additional equity capital on terms that may be onerous or highly dilutive. Our ability to refinance our indebtedness will depend on the capital markets and our financial condition at such time. We may not be able to engage in any of these activities or engage in these activities on desirable terms, which could result in a default on our debt obligations.

We recognized a significant amount of revenue in recent years due to the amortization of deferred revenue attributable to transactions occurring in the past. The reduction in deferred revenues resulted in increased revenue and gross margin and our reported net income for the fiscal years 2015 and 2016. Revenue from the amortization of deferred revenue will not recur to the same extent in future periods; as a result, there are no assurances that we will be able to report net income in future periods. In addition, as less revenue is recognized from deferred revenue amortization and we adopt a new accounting standard for revenue recognition, we may experience greater volatility in our quarterly and annual operating results.

As a result of our historical practice of providing Implied Maintenance Release PCS on many of our products, we were required, under accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, or GAAP, to recognize revenue for many of these transactions ratably over a period that typically ranged from three to six years. Due to changes in accounting rules, namely Accounting Standards Update, or ASU, No. 2009-13 and ASU No. 2009-14, and the cessation of our practice of providing Implied Maintenance Release PCS for many of our products, revenue from older transactions continues to be recognized and, in some cases, accelerated into revenue. This resulted in significant increases to revenue and declines in deferred revenue during 2015, 2016 and 2017. New sales of many of the same products now qualify for upfront recognition and do not add significantly to deferred revenue balances. As a result, revenue attributable to older transactions has been declining significantly in recent periods as corresponding deferred revenue is fully amortized and not being replenished by new transactions. Deferred revenue for the fiscal years 2015, 2016 and 2017 declined approximately \$69 million, \$123 million and \$31 million, respectively.

The amortization of deferred revenue described above resulted in our reporting a smaller net loss of \$14 million in 2017 and net income of approximately \$48 million in 2016 and \$2 million in 2015. With the impact of deferred revenue amortization declining significantly in future periods, there are no assurances that we will be able to report net income in future periods. In addition, declining amortization of deferred revenue will also make it more difficult to comply with the maximum leverage ratio requirement of our Financing Agreement. Our financial results and the impact of the deferred revenue are discussed in “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” in Item 7 of this Form 10-K.

The adoption of ASU No. 2014-09, Revenue from Contracts with Customers (ASC 606) on January 1, 2018, which will require virtually all product sales to be recognized as revenue upon delivery, will further impact our deferred revenue balances since, upon adoption, using the modified retrospective method, we will be required to record a cumulative reduction of deferred revenue for many transactions that had qualified for subscription accounting under legacy GAAP. We expect that between \$95 million and \$115 million of the deferred revenue recorded as of December 31, 2017 will be eliminated upon adoption of ASC 606, on January 1, 2018. Following adoption of ASC 606, we expect to recognize a greater proportion of revenue upon delivery of our products, whereas some of our current product sales are initially recorded in deferred revenue and recognized over a long period of time. Accordingly, our operating results may become more volatile as a result of the adoption.

The significant reduction of deferred revenue due to the factors described above will also result in increased volatility in future quarterly and annual periods, as revenue and operating results are more immediately impacted by current period sales and shipment activity. As a result, we may experience increased volatility in quarterly and annual operating performance in fiscal year 2018 and beyond.

Our revenues and operating results are difficult to predict and may fluctuate from period to period.

Our results of operations have been, and may continue to, be subject to significant quarterly variation. Our revenues and operating results for any particular quarter may also vary due to a number of factors, including, but not limited to, those enumerated under the section “Cautionary Note on Forward-Looking Statements, ” appearing elsewhere in this Form 10-K and:

- the timing of large or enterprise-wide sales and our ability to recognize revenues from such sales;
- demand planning and logistics;
- reliance on third-party reseller and distribution channels;
- changes in operating expenses;
- price protections and provisions for inventory obsolescence extended to resellers and distributors;
- seasonal factors, such as higher consumer demand at year-end; and
- complex accounting rules for revenue recognition.

The occurrence and interaction of these variables may cause our revenues and operating results to fluctuate from period to period. As a result, period-to-period comparisons of our revenues and operating results may not provide a good indication of our future performance. We cannot be certain when, or if, our operations will be profitable in future periods.

Our revenue backlog estimates are based on certain assumptions and are subject to unexpected adjustments and cancellations and backlog orders may not be timely converted to revenues in any particular fiscal period, if at all, or be indicative of our actual operating results for any future period.

Our revenue backlog, as we define it, consists of firm orders received and includes both (i) orders where the customer has paid in advance of our performance obligations being fulfilled, which are reflected as deferred revenues on our balance sheet, and (ii) orders for future product deliveries or services that have not yet been invoiced by us. To the extent that our customers cancel their orders with us, or reduce their requirements during a particular period for any reason, we will not realize revenue or profit from the associated revenue backlog. Even where a project proceeds as scheduled, it is possible that the customer may default and fail to pay amounts owed to us. Material delays, payment defaults or cancellations could reduce the amount of revenue backlog currently reported, and consequently, could inhibit the conversion of that backlog into revenues. Furthermore, orders included in our revenue backlog may not be profitable. We may experience variances in the realization of our revenue backlog because of project delays or cancellations resulting from external market factors and economic factors beyond our control. As a result, even if we realize all of the revenue from the projects in our revenue backlog, if our expenses associated with these projects are higher than expected, our results of operations and financial condition would be adversely affected.

Fluctuations in foreign exchange rates may result in short-term currency exchange losses and could adversely affect our revenues from foreign markets and our manufacturing costs in the long term.

Our international sales are, for the most part, transacted through foreign subsidiaries and generally in the currency of the end-user customers. Consequently, we are exposed to short-term currency exchange risks that may adversely affect our revenues,

operating results and cash flows. The majority of our international sales are transacted in euros. To hedge against the dollar/euro exchange exposure of the resulting forecasted payables, receivables and cash balances, we may enter into foreign currency contracts. The success of our hedging programs depends on the accuracy of our forecasts of transaction activity in foreign currency. To the extent that these forecasts are over- or understated during periods of currency volatility, we may experience currency gains or losses. Our hedging activities, if enacted, may only offset a portion of the adverse financial impact resulting from unfavorable movement in dollar/euro exchange rates, which could adversely affect our financial position or results of operations.

Furthermore, the significance to our business of sales in Europe subjects us to risks associated with long-term changes in the dollar/euro exchange rate. A sustained strengthening of the U.S. dollar against the euro would decrease our expected future U.S. dollar revenues from European sales, and could have a significant adverse effect on our overall profit margins. During the past few years, economic instability in Europe, including concern over sovereign debt in Greece, Italy, Ireland and certain other European Union countries, caused significant fluctuations in the value of the euro relative to those of other currencies, including the U.S. dollar. Continuing uncertainty regarding economic conditions, including the solvency of these countries and the stability of the Eurozone, could lead to significant long-term economic weakness and reduced economic growth in Europe, the occurrence of which, or the potential occurrence of which, could lead to a sustained strengthening of the U.S. dollar against the euro, adversely affecting the profitability of our European operations.

In addition, we source and manufacture many of our products in China and our costs may increase should the renminbi not remain stable with the U.S. dollar. Although the renminbi is pegged against a basket of currencies determined by the People's Bank of China, the renminbi may appreciate or depreciate significantly in value against the U.S. dollar in the long term. In addition, if China were to permit the renminbi to float to a free market rate of exchange, it is widely anticipated that the renminbi would appreciate significantly in value against U.S. dollar. An increase in the value of the renminbi against the U.S. dollar would have the effect of increasing the labor and production costs of our Chinese manufacturers in U.S. dollar terms, which may result in their passing such costs to us in the form of increased pricing, which would adversely affect our profit margins if we could not pass those price increases along to our customers.

Global economic weakness and uncertainty could adversely affect our revenues, gross margins and expenses.

Our business is impacted by global economic conditions, which have been in recent years, and continue to, be volatile. Specifically, our revenues and gross margins depend significantly on global economic conditions and the demand for our products and services in the markets in which we compete. Economic weakness and uncertainty have resulted, and may result in the future, in decreased revenue, gross margin, earnings or growth rates and difficulty managing inventory levels. Sustained uncertainty about global economic conditions may adversely affect demand for our products and services and could cause demand to differ materially from our expectations as customers curtail or delay spending on our products and services. Economic weakness and uncertainty also make it more difficult for us to make accurate forecasts of revenues, gross margins and expenses.

The inability of our customers to obtain credit in the future may impair their ability to make timely payments to us. Tightening of credit by financial institutions could also lead customers to postpone spending or to cancel, decrease or delay their existing or future orders with us. Customer insolvencies could negatively impact our revenues and our ability to collect receivables. Financial difficulties experienced by our suppliers or distributors could result in product delays, increased accounts receivable defaults and inventory challenges. In the event we are impacted by global economic weakness, we may record additional charges relating to restructuring costs or the impairment of assets, and our business and results of operations could be materially and adversely affected.

Any attempt by the United States to withdraw from, or materially modify NAFTA, and certain other international trade agreements, or attempts to impose tariffs or otherwise limit international trade could adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations .

A significant portion of our business activities is conducted in foreign countries, including Mexico and China. The current Administration has indicated that it is not supportive of certain existing international trade agreements, including the North American Free Trade Agreement, or NAFTA. The current Administration has also indicated that it may impose certain tariffs or consider other limitations on international trade. If the U.S. takes action to withdraw from or materially modify NAFTA, or certain other international trade agreements, or to otherwise limit international trade, our business, financial condition and results of operations could be adversely affected.

Risks Related to Our Stock

The market price of our common stock has been and may continue to be volatile.

The market price of our common stock has historically experienced volatility. Our stock may continue to fluctuate substantially in the future in response to various factors, some of which are beyond our control. These factors include, but are not limited to:

- period-to-period variations in our revenues or operating results;
- our failure to accurately forecast revenues or operating results or to report financial or operating results within the range of our previously issued guidance;
- our ability to produce accurate and timely financial statements;
- whether our results meet analysts' expectations;
- market reaction to significant corporate initiatives or announcements;
- our ability to innovate;
- our relative competitive position within our markets;
- shifts in markets or demand for our solutions;
- changes in our relationships with suppliers, resellers, distributors or customers;
- our commencement of, or involvement in, litigation;
- short sales, hedging or other derivative transactions involving shares of our common stock; and
- shifts in financial markets and fluctuations of exchange rates.

Additionally, broader financial market and global economic trends may affect the market price of our common stock, regardless of our operating performance.

Delaware law and our charter documents may impede or discourage a takeover, which could reduce the market price of our common stock.

We are a Delaware corporation, and the anti-takeover provisions of Delaware law impose various impediments to the ability of a third party to acquire control of us, even if a change in control would be beneficial to our existing stockholders. In addition, our board of directors, or a committee thereof, has the power, without stockholder approval, to designate the terms of one or more series of preferred stock and issue shares of preferred stock. The ability of our board of directors or a committee thereof to create and issue a new series of preferred stock, our stockholders rights plan, and certain provisions of Delaware law and our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, could impede a merger, takeover or other business combination involving us, or discourage a potential acquirer from making a tender offer for our common stock, which, under certain circumstances, could reduce the market price of our common stock.

Risks related to our 2.00% convertible senior notes due 2020

The use of cash to satisfy our conversion obligation under the Notes may adversely affect our liquidity, and we may not have the ability to raise the funds necessary to settle conversions in cash or to repurchase the Notes upon a fundamental change. The agreements governing our other indebtedness may contain limitations on our ability to pay cash upon conversion or repurchase of the Notes.

On June 15, 2015, we completed an offering of \$125.0 million aggregate principal amount of the Notes. The Notes may be converted into shares of our common stock, at the election of the holder, if certain conditions are met, including, among other things, the last reported sale price of the common stock being greater than or equal to 130% of the conversion price of the Notes (initially \$21.94 per share) for at least 20 trading days within a period of 30 consecutive trading days. In the event the conditional conversion feature of the Notes is triggered, and one or more holders elect to convert their Notes, we may elect to satisfy our conversion obligation by paying cash or by delivering shares of our common stock. Further, holders of the Notes have the right to require us to repurchase their Notes upon the occurrence of a fundamental change, which generally means a merger, sale of all or substantially all of our assets, or other similar change of control transaction. To the extent we do not elect to satisfy our

conversion obligation by delivering solely shares of our common stock, we would be required to settle a portion or all of our conversion obligation through the payment of cash. The use of cash to settle our conversion obligation could adversely affect our liquidity. Further, we may not have enough available cash, or be able to obtain financing at the time we are required to make repurchases of the Notes surrendered or to make cash payments in respect of Notes being converted. The Financing Agreement contains a restriction on our ability to settle conversions of the Notes with cash.

The conditional conversion feature of the Notes, if triggered, may adversely affect our operating results.

Even if holders do not elect to convert their Notes, we could be required under applicable accounting rules to reclassify all or a portion of the outstanding principal of the Notes as a current, rather than long-term, liability which would result in a material reduction of our net working capital.

Our failure to repurchase Notes or pay any cash upon conversion of the Notes would constitute a default under the indenture governing the Notes, and could cause defaults under our other or future indebtedness.

Our failure to repurchase Notes or pay any cash upon conversion of the Notes as required by the indenture governing the Notes would constitute a default under the indenture. This kind of default under the indenture would also constitute a default under the Financing Agreement, and it could constitute a default under agreements governing our future indebtedness. If the repayment of the indebtedness under the Financing Agreement, or any other indebtedness, were to be accelerated after any applicable notice or grace periods, we may not have sufficient funds to repay the indebtedness and repurchase the Notes or make cash payments upon conversions thereof.

The capped call transaction may affect the trading price of our common stock.

In connection with the offering of the Notes, we entered into the Capped Call. The primary purpose of the Capped Call was to reduce potential dilution to our common stock and/or offset any cash payments we may be required to make in excess of the principal amount, in each case, upon any conversion of Notes. In order to establish a hedge of the Capped Call, the Counterparty may have entered into various derivative transactions with respect to our common stock, and it may modify its hedge positions from time to time by entering into or unwinding various derivative transactions with respect to our common stock and/or purchasing or selling our common stock or other securities in secondary market transactions prior to the maturity of the Notes. The Counterparty is likely to undertake these activities during, and potentially prior to, any observation period related to a conversion of the Notes. These activities could cause or avoid an increase or a decrease in the market price of our common stock.

ITEM 1B. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS

None.

ITEM 2. PROPERTIES

We lease approximately 173,000 square feet in two facilities in Burlington, Massachusetts for our principal corporate and administrative offices, as well as for significant R&D activities. The leases for these facilities expire in May 2020.

We lease approximately 26,000 square feet of office space in Iver Heath, United Kingdom for our European headquarters, which includes administrative, sales and support functions, and 24,000 square feet in Dublin, Ireland for the final assembly and distribution of our products. We also lease approximately 8,000 square feet in Singapore for our Asian headquarters.

We also lease office space for sales operations and research and development in several other domestic and international locations.

ITEM 3. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

Our industry is characterized by the existence of a large number of patents and frequent claims and litigation regarding patent and other intellectual property rights. In addition to the legal proceedings described below, we are involved in legal proceedings from

time to time arising from the normal course of business activities, including claims of alleged infringement of intellectual property rights and contractual, commercial, employee relations, product or service performance, or other matters.

Class Action Lawsuit

In November 2016, a purported securities class action lawsuit was filed in the U.S. District Court for the District of Massachusetts (Mohanty v. Avid Technology, Inc. et al., No. 16-cv-12336) against the Company and certain of its executive officers seeking unspecified damages and other relief on behalf of a purported class of purchasers of the Company's common stock between August 4, 2016 and November 9, 2016, inclusive. The complaint purported to state a claim for violation of federal securities laws as a result of alleged violations of Sections 10(b) and 20(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or the Exchange Act, and Rule 10b-5 promulgated thereunder. The complaint's allegations relate generally to the Company's disclosure surrounding the level of implementation of the Company's Avid NEXIS solution product offerings. On February 7, 2017, the Court appointed a lead plaintiff and counsel in the matter. On June 14, 2017, the Company moved to dismiss the action. On July 31, 2017, the lead plaintiff filed an opposition to the Company's motion to dismiss, and on August 21, 2017, the Company filed its reply brief. On October 13, 2017, after a mediation, the parties reached an agreement in principle to settle this litigation. The Company expects the majority of the settlement to be funded by its insurers. Finalization of the settlement is subject to a number of conditions, including execution of definitive documentation and approval by the court.

The outcome of legal proceedings and claims brought against us is subject to significant uncertainty and, as a result, our financial position or results of operations may be negatively affected by the unfavorable resolution of one or more of these proceedings for the period in which a matter is resolved. See Part I, Item 1A, "Risk Factors."

ITEM 4. MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES

Not Applicable.

PART II

ITEM 5. MARKET FOR REGISTRANT'S COMMON EQUITY AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS AND ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES

Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Global Select Market under the symbol AVID. The table below shows the high and low sales prices of our common stock for each calendar quarter of the fiscal years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 .

	2017		2016	
	High	Low	High	Low
First Quarter	\$6.07	\$4.21	\$8.33	\$6.05
Second Quarter	\$5.87	\$4.45	\$6.69	\$5.26
Third Quarter	\$5.53	\$4.09	\$9.78	\$5.60
Fourth Quarter	\$7.65	\$3.99	\$7.92	\$3.99

On March 12, 2018 , the last reported sale price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Global Select Market was \$5.14 per share. The approximate number of holders of record of our common stock at March 12, 2018 was 262 . This number does not include stockholders for whom shares were held in a “nominee” or “street” name.

We have never declared or paid cash dividends on our capital stock, and we do not anticipate paying any cash dividends in the foreseeable future. Our Financing Agreement prohibits us from declaring or paying any dividends in cash on our capital stock.

Stock Performance Graph

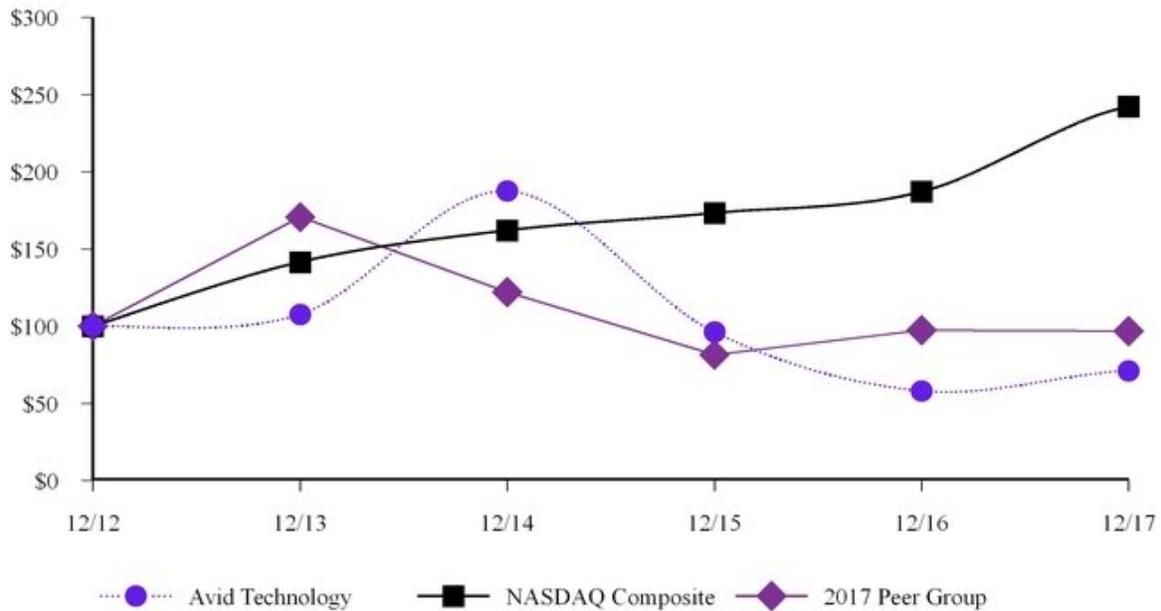
The following graph compares the cumulative stockholder return on our common stock during the period from December 31, 2012 through December 31, 2017 with the cumulative return during the period for:

- the Nasdaq Composite Index (all companies traded on Nasdaq Capital, Global or Global Select Markets),
- the 2017 Avid Peer Group Index (see details following the graph).

This comparison assumes the investment of \$100 on December 31, 2012 in our common stock, the Nasdaq Market Index and the Avid Peer Group Index, and assumes that dividends, if any, were reinvested.

COMPARISON OF FIVE-YEAR CUMULATIVE TOTAL RETURN

Among Avid Technology, Inc., the Nasdaq Composite Index,
and the Avid Peer Groups



Because our products and services are diverse, we do not believe any single published industry index is appropriate for comparing stockholder return. As a result, we compare our common stock returns to a peer group index, which was composed of Nasdaq traded companies selected by Avid to best represent its peers based on various criteria, including industry classification, number of employees and market capitalization.

The composition of the Avid Peer Group Index is dictated by the peer group selected by the compensation committee of Avid’s board of directors for its reference in setting executive compensation. The compensation committee seeks generally to include companies with similar product and service offerings to those of Avid while also achieving a balance of smaller and larger sized peer companies in terms of market capitalizations and revenue.

The Avid Peer Group Index for 2017 was composed of: 3D Systems Corporation, Brightcove Inc., Carbonite, Inc., Commvault Systems Inc., Cray Inc., Extreme Networks, Inc., Harmonic Inc., MicroStrategy Incorporated, Monotype Imagine Holdings Inc., Progress Software Corporation, Quantum Corporation, RealNetworks, Inc., Shutterstock, Inc., and TiVo Corporation.

The Avid Peer Group Index is weighted based on market capitalization.

ITEM 6. SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA

The selected condensed consolidated financial data below should be read in conjunction with Item 7, “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations,” and Item 8, “Financial Statements and Supplementary Financial Information,” included elsewhere in this Form 10-K. The selected condensed consolidated financial data as of December 31, 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014 and 2013 and for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014 and 2013 has been derived from our audited consolidated financial statements.

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS DATA :
(in thousands, except per share data)

	For the Year Ended December 31,				
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
Net revenues (1)	\$ 419,003	\$ 511,930	\$ 505,595	\$ 530,251	\$ 563,412
Cost of revenues	176,887	179,207	197,445	204,471	223,909
Gross profit	242,116	332,723	308,150	325,780	339,503
Operating expenses:					
Research and development	68,212	81,564	95,898	90,390	95,249
Marketing and selling	106,257	110,338	122,511	133,049	133,890
General and administrative	53,892	61,471	74,109	81,181	77,578
Amortization of intangible assets	1,450	2,498	2,354	1,626	2,648
Restructuring costs (recoveries), net	7,059	12,837	6,305	(165)	5,370
Total operating expenses	236,870	268,708	301,177	306,081	314,735
Operating income	5,246	64,015	6,973	19,699	24,768
Other expense, net	(18,668)	(18,671)	(6,408)	(2,783)	(676)
(Loss) income before income taxes	(13,422)	45,344	565	16,916	24,092
Provision for (benefit from) income taxes	133	(2,875)	(1,915)	2,188	2,939
Net (loss) income	\$ (13,555)	\$ 48,219	\$ 2,480	\$ 14,728	\$ 21,153
Net (loss) income per share – basic and diluted	\$ (0.33)	\$ 1.20	\$ 0.06	\$ 0.38	\$ 0.54
Weighted-average common shares outstanding – basic	41,020	40,021	39,423	39,147	39,044
Weighted-average common shares outstanding – diluted	41,020	40,176	40,380	39,267	39,070

- (1) Our revenues and operating results have been affected by the deferral of revenues from customer transactions occurring prior to 2011. On January 1, 2011, we adopted Accounting Standards Update, or ASU, No. 2009-14. Substantially all revenue arrangements prior to January 1, 2011 were generally recognized on a ratable basis over the service period of Implied Maintenance Release PCS. Subsequent to January 1, 2011, product revenues are generally recognized upon delivery and Implied Maintenance PCS and other service and support elements are recognized as services are rendered. See our policy on “Revenue Recognition” in Note B to our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Form 10-K for a further discussion of the effects of the changes to our revenue recognition policies on our financial results.

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET DATA:
(in thousands)

	As of December 31,				
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
Cash, cash equivalents and marketable securities	\$ 57,223	\$ 44,948	\$ 17,902	\$ 25,056	\$ 48,203
Working capital deficit (1)	(61,753)	(86,931)	(167,450)	(157,492)	(133,517)
Total assets	234,684	249,581	247,926	191,599	235,142
Deferred revenues (current and long-term amounts)	194,613	225,684	348,382	414,840	466,832
Long-term liabilities (1)	287,174	281,556	272,599	222,641	270,594
Total stockholders’ deficit	(268,570)	(269,911)	(329,572)	(341,070)	(359,335)

- (1) The presentation of prior year working capital deficit and long-term liability amounts have been changed to reflect our retrospective adoption of *ASU No. 2015-17, Balance Sheet Classification of Deferred Taxes*. The standard requires entities to present all deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities as non-current in a classified balance sheet.

ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

EXECUTIVE OVERVIEW

Business Overview

We develop, market, sell, and support software, hardware and integrated solutions for video and audio content creation, management and distribution. We do this by providing an open and efficient platform for digital media, along with a comprehensive set of tools and workflow solutions. Digital media are video, audio or graphic elements in which the image, sound or picture is recorded and stored as digital values, as opposed to analog or tape-based signals. Our products and solutions are used in production and post-production facilities; film studios; network, affiliate, independent and cable television stations; recording studios; live-sound performance venues; advertising agencies; government and educational institutions; corporate communications departments; and by independent video and audio creative professionals, as well as aspiring professionals. Projects produced using our tools, platform and ecosystem include feature films, television programming, live events, news broadcasts, sports productions, commercials, music, video and other digital media content.

Our mission is to enable our clients to create, connect and collaborate through continuous innovation of an open media ecosystem, powerful common platform and tools. Our clients rely on Avid to create the most prestigious and award-winning feature films, music recordings, television shows, live concerts, sporting events and news broadcasts. Avid has been honored for technological innovation with 15 Emmy Awards, one Grammy Award, two Oscars and the first ever America Cinema Editors Technical Excellence Award. Our creative tools and workflow solutions were used in all 2018 Oscar nominated films for Best Film Editing, Best Sound Editing, Best Sound Mixing, and Best Original Score and used in the winner of Best Picture.

Operations Overview

Our strategy for connecting creative professionals and media organizations with audiences in a more powerful, efficient, collaborative, and profitable ways leverages our Avid MediaCentral Platform - the open, extensible, and customizable foundation that streamlines and simplifies content workflows by integrating all Avid or third party products and services that run on top of it. The platform provides secure and protected access, and enables the creation and delivery of content faster and easier through a set of modular application suites and new public and private marketplaces, that together, represent an open, integrated and flexible media production and distribution environment for the media industry. Our Avid Advantage Support Plans reinforce our strategy by offering a new standard in service, support and education to enable our customers to derive more efficiency from their Avid investment. In addition, the Avid Customer Association, or ACA, was established as the world's most innovative and influential media technology community representing thousands of organizations and over 20,000 professionals from all levels of the industry. The ACA fosters collaboration between Avid, its customers and other industry colleagues to help shape our product offerings as well as providing a means to shape our industry together.

Another key element of our strategy is our transition to a subscription or recurring revenue based model. We started offering cloud-based subscription licensing options for some of our products and solutions in 2014, and had approximately 94,000 paying cloud-enabled subscribers at the end of 2017, a 54% increase from 2016. These licensing options offer choice in pricing and deployment to suit our customers' needs and are expected to increase recurring revenue on a longer term basis. However, during our transition to a recurring revenue model, we expect that our revenue, deferred revenue, and cash flow from operations will be adversely affected as an increasing portion of our total revenue is recognized ratably rather than up front, and as new product offerings are sold at a wider variety of price points.

As a complement to our strategy, we have implemented programs to reduce costs, increase operational efficiencies, align talent and enhance our business, including the cost efficiency program announced in February 2016. The cost efficiency program encompassed a series of measures intended to allow us to more efficiently operate in a leaner, more directed cost structure. These measures included reductions in our workforce, consolidation of facilities, transfers of certain business processes to lower cost regions and reductions in other third-party services costs. The cost efficiency program was substantially completed in 2017.

CRITICAL ACCOUNTING POLICIES AND ESTIMATES

Our consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. The preparation of these financial statements requires us to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and the disclosures of contingent assets and liabilities as of the date of the financial statements, and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. We regularly reevaluate our estimates and judgments, including those related to the following: revenue recognition and allowances for sales returns and exchanges; stock-based compensation; income tax assets and liabilities; and restructuring charges and accruals. We base our estimates and judgments on historical experience and various other factors we believe to be reasonable under the circumstances, the results of which form the basis for judgments about the carrying values of assets and liabilities and the amounts of revenues and expenses that are not readily apparent from other sources. Actual results may differ from these estimates.

We believe the following critical accounting policies most significantly affect the portrayal of our financial condition and involve our most difficult and subjective estimates and judgments.

Revenue Recognition and Allowance for Sales Returns and Exchanges

General

We commence revenue recognition when persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, delivery has occurred, the sales price is fixed or determinable and collection is reasonably assured. Generally, the products we sell do not require significant production, modification or customization. Installation of our products is generally routine, consists of implementation and configuration and does not have to be performed by us.

At the time of a sales transaction, we make an assessment of the collectability of the amount due from the customer. Revenues are recognized only if it is reasonably assured that collection will occur. When making this assessment, we consider customer credit-worthiness and historical payment experience. If it is determined from the outset of the arrangement that collection is not reasonably assured, revenues are recognized on a cash basis, provided that all other revenue recognition criteria are satisfied. At the outset of the arrangement, we also assess whether the fee associated with the order is fixed or determinable and free of contingencies or significant uncertainties. When assessing whether the fee is fixed or determinable, we consider the payment terms of the transaction, our collection experience in similar transactions without making concessions, and our involvement, if any, in third-party financing transactions, among other factors. If the fee is not fixed or determinable, revenues are recognized only as payments become due from the customer, provided that all other revenue recognition criteria are met. If a significant portion of the fee is due after our normal payment terms, we evaluate whether we have sufficient history of successfully collecting past transactions with similar terms without offering concessions. If that collection history is sufficient, revenue recognition commences, upon delivery of the products, assuming all other revenue recognition criteria are satisfied. If we were to make different judgments or assumptions about any of these matters, it could cause a material increase or decrease in the amount of revenues reported in a particular period.

We often receive multiple purchase orders or contracts from a single customer or a group of related customers that are evaluated to determine if they are, in effect, part of a single arrangement. In situations when we have concluded that two or more orders with the same customer are so closely related that they are, in effect, parts of a single arrangement, we account for those orders as a single arrangement for revenue recognition purposes. In other circumstances, when we have concluded that two or more orders with the same customer are independent buying decisions, such as an earlier purchase of a product and a subsequent purchase of a software upgrade or maintenance contract, we account for those orders as separate arrangements for revenue recognition purposes.

For many of our products, there has been an ongoing practice of Avid making available at no charge to customers minor feature and compatibility enhancements as well as bug fixes on a when-and-if-available basis, collectively the Software Updates, for a period of time after initial sales to end users. The implicit obligation to make such Software Updates available to customers over a period of time represents implied post-contract customer support, which is deemed to be a deliverable in each arrangement and is accounted for as a separate element, or Implied Maintenance Release PCS.

Over the course of the last few years, in connection with a strategic initiative to increase support and other recurring revenue streams, we have taken a number of steps to eliminate the longstanding practice of providing Implied Maintenance Release PCS

for many of our products, including our Media Composer, Pro Tools and Sibelius product lines. In the third quarter and fourth quarter of 2015, respectively, we concluded that Implied Maintenance Release PCS for our Media Composer and Sibelius product lines had ceased. In the first quarter of 2016, in connection with the release of Cloud Collaboration in Pro Tools version 12.5, which was an undelivered feature that had prevented us from recognizing any revenue related to new Pro Tools 12 software sales as it represented a specified upgrade right for which vendor specific objective evidence, or VSOE, of fair value was not available, we concluded that Implied Maintenance Release PCS for our Pro Tools 12 product lines had also ended. Our determination that Pro Tools 12 Implied Maintenance Release PCS had ended was based on management (i) clearly communicating a policy of no longer providing any Software Updates or other support to customers that are not covered under a paid support plan and (ii) implementing robust digital rights management tools to enforce the policy. With the new policy and technology for Pro Tools 12 in place, combined with management's intent to continue to adhere to the policy, management concluded in the first quarter of 2016 that Implied Maintenance Release PCS for Pro Tools 12 transactions no longer exists. As a result of the conclusion that Implied Maintenance Release PCS on Pro Tools 12 has ended, revenue and net income in the first quarter of 2016 increased approximately \$11.1 million, reflecting the recognition of orders received after the launch of Pro Tools 12 that would have qualified for earlier recognition using the residual method of accounting. In addition, the elimination of Implied Maintenance Release PCS also resulted in the accelerated recognition of maintenance and product revenues that were previously being recognized on a ratable basis over a much longer expected period of Implied Maintenance Release PCS rather than the contractual maintenance period. The reduction in the estimated amortization period of transactions being recognized on a ratable basis resulted in an additional \$41.8 million of revenue during the year ended December 31, 2016.

Management will continue to evaluate the judgment of whether Implied Maintenance Release PCS exists on each product line and version. Since the remaining products that contain Implied Maintenance Release PCS largely consist of products that fall under the non-software revenue recognition guidance, where management defers a small portion of revenue based on the best estimated selling price of Implied Maintenance Release PCS rather than the entire order value as required for transactions that fall under software revenue recognition guidance, any further determinations that Implied Maintenance Release PCS no longer exists for other product lines will be unlikely to result in a significant impact to the financial statements in any future periods.

We enter into certain contractual arrangements that have multiple elements, one or more of which may be delivered subsequent to the delivery of other elements. These multiple-deliverable arrangements may include products, support, training, professional services and Implied Maintenance Release PCS. For these multiple-element arrangements, we allocate revenue to each deliverable of the arrangement based on the relative selling prices of the deliverables. In such circumstances, we first determine the selling price of each deliverable based on (i) VSOE of fair value if that exists; (ii) third-party evidence of selling price, or TPE, when VSOE does not exist; or (iii) best estimate of the selling price, or BEBP, when neither VSOE nor TPE exists. Revenue is then allocated to the non-software deliverables as a group and to the software deliverables as a group using the relative selling prices of each of the deliverables in the arrangement based on the selling price hierarchy. Our process for determining BEBP for deliverables for which VSOE or TPE does not exist involves significant management judgment. In determining BEBP, we consider a number of data points, including:

- the pricing established by management when setting prices for deliverables that are intended to be sold on a standalone basis;
- contractually stated prices for deliverables that are intended to be sold on a standalone basis;
- the pricing of standalone sales that may not qualify as VSOE of fair value due to limited volumes or variation in prices; and
- other pricing factors, such as the geographical region in which the products are sold and expected discounts based on the customer size and type.

In determining a BEBP for Implied Maintenance Release PCS, which we do not sell separately, we consider (i) the service period for the Implied Maintenance Release PCS, (ii) the differential in value of the Implied Maintenance Release PCS deliverable compared to a full support contract, (iii) the likely list price that would have resulted from our established pricing practices had the deliverable been offered separately, and (iv) the prices a customer would likely be willing to pay.

We estimate the service period of Implied Maintenance Release PCS based on the length of time the product version purchased by the customer is planned to be supported with Software Updates. If facts and circumstances indicate that the original service period of Implied Maintenance Release PCS for a product has changed significantly after original revenue recognition has commenced, we will modify the remaining estimated service period accordingly and recognize the then-remaining deferred revenue balance over the revised service period.

We have established VSOE of fair value for all professional services and training and for some of our support offerings. Our policy for establishing VSOE of fair value consists of evaluating standalone sales to determine if a substantial portion of the transactions fall within a reasonable range. If a sufficient volume of standalone sales exist and the standalone pricing for a substantial portion of the transactions falls within a reasonable range, management concludes that VSOE of fair value exists.

The following table sets forth our determination of the estimated range of BESP of Implied Maintenance Release PCS, stated as a percentage of the BESP of the underlying product being sold, and the estimated range of service periods of Implied Maintenance Release PCS by product group for all periods presented in the consolidated financial statements.

Product Group	BESP of Implied Maintenance Release PCS (as a % of Product BESP)	Estimated Service Period
Professional video creative tools	1% to 13%	18 to 72 months
Video storage and workflow solutions	1% to 2%	72 months
Media management solutions	1% to 3%	12 to 72 months
Digital audio software and workstations solutions	1% to 8%	12 to 36 months
Control surfaces, consoles and live-sound systems	1% to 5%	12 to 96 months
Notation software	4% to 8%	12 to 46 months

In accordance with Accounting Standards Update, or ASU, No. 2009-14, we exclude from the scope of software revenue recognition requirements our sales of tangible products that contain both software and non-software components that function together to deliver the essential functionality of the tangible products. We adopted ASU No. 2009-13 and ASU No. 2009-14 prospectively on January 1, 2011 for new and materially modified arrangements originating after December 31, 2010.

Prior to our adoption of ASU No. 2009-14, we primarily recognized revenues using the revenue recognition criteria of Accounting Standards Codification, or ASC, Subtopic 985-605, *Software - Revenue Recognition*. As a result of our adoption of ASU No. 2009-14 on January 1, 2011, a majority of our products are now considered non-software elements under GAAP, which excludes them from the scope of ASC Subtopic 985-605 and includes them within the scope of ASC Topic 605, *Revenue Recognition*. Because we had not been able to establish VSOE of fair value for Implied Maintenance Release PCS, as described further below, substantially all revenue arrangements prior to January 1, 2011 were recognized on a ratable basis over the service period of Implied Maintenance Release PCS. Subsequent to January 1, 2011 and the adoption of ASU No. 2009-14, we determine a relative selling price for all elements of the arrangement through the use of BESP, as VSOE and TPE are typically not available, resulting in revenue recognition upon delivery of arrangement consideration attributable to product revenue, provided all other criteria for revenue recognition are met, and revenue recognition of Implied Maintenance Release PCS and other service and support elements over time as services are rendered.

The timing of revenue recognition of customer arrangements follows a number of different accounting models determined by the characteristics of the arrangement, and that timing can vary significantly from the timing of related cash payments due from customers. One significant factor affecting the timing of revenue recognition is the determination of whether each deliverable in the arrangement is considered to be a software deliverable or a non-software deliverable. For transactions occurring after January 1, 2011, our revenue recognition policies have generally resulted in the recognition of approximately 70% of billings as revenue in the year of billing, and prior to January 1, 2011, the previously applied revenue recognition policies resulted in the recognition of approximately 30% of billings as revenue in the year of billing.

Revenue Recognition of Non-Software Deliverables

Revenue from products that are considered non-software deliverables is recognized upon delivery of the product to the customer. Products are considered delivered to the customer once they have been shipped and title and risk of loss has been transferred. For most of our product sales, these criteria are met at the time the product is shipped. Revenue from support that is considered a non-software deliverable is initially deferred and is recognized ratably over the contractual period of the arrangement, which is generally twelve months. Professional services and training services are typically sold to customers on a time and materials basis.

Revenue from professional services and training services that are considered non-software deliverables is recognized for these deliverables as services are provided to the customer. Revenue for Implied Maintenance Release PCS that is considered a non-software deliverable is recognized ratably over the service period of Implied Maintenance Release PCS, which ranges from one to eight years.

Revenue Recognition of Software Deliverables

We recognize the following types of elements sold using software revenue recognition guidance: (i) software products and software upgrades, when the software sold in a customer arrangement is more than incidental to the arrangement as a whole and the product does not contain hardware that functions with the software to provide essential functionality, (ii) initial support contracts where the underlying product being supported is considered to be a software deliverable, (iii) support contract renewals, and (iv) professional services and training that relate to deliverables considered to be software deliverables. Because we do not have VSOE of the fair value of our software products, we are permitted to account for our typical customer arrangements that include multiple elements using the residual method. Under the residual method, the VSOE of fair value of the undelivered elements (which could include support, professional services or training, or any combination thereof) is deferred and the remaining portion of the total arrangement fee is recognized as revenue for the delivered elements. If evidence of the VSOE of fair value of one or more undelivered elements does not exist, revenues are deferred and recognized when delivery of those elements occurs or when VSOE of fair value can be established. VSOE of fair value is typically based on the price charged when the element is sold separately to customers. We are unable to use the residual method to recognize revenues for some arrangements that include products that are software deliverables under GAAP since VSOE of fair value does not exist for Implied Maintenance Release PCS elements, which are included in some of our arrangements.

For software products that include Implied Maintenance Release PCS, an element for which VSOE of fair value does not exist, revenue for the entire arrangement fee, which could include combinations of product, professional services, training and support, is recognized ratably as a group over the longest service period of any deliverable in the arrangement, with recognition commencing on the date delivery has occurred for all deliverables in the arrangement (or begins to occur in the case of professional services, training and support). Standalone sales of support contracts are recognized ratably over the service period of the product being supported.

From time to time, we offer certain customers free upgrades or specified future products or enhancements. When a software deliverable arrangement contains an Implied Maintenance Release PCS deliverable, revenue recognition of the entire arrangement will only commence when any free upgrades or specified future products or enhancements have been delivered, assuming all other products in the arrangement have been delivered and all services, if any, have commenced.

Other Revenue Recognition Policies

In a limited number of arrangements, the professional services and training to be delivered are considered essential to the functionality of our software products. If services sold in an arrangement are deemed to be essential to the functionality of the software products, the arrangement is accounted for using contract accounting. As we have concluded that we cannot reliably estimate our contract costs, we use the completed contract method of contract accounting. The completed contract method of accounting defers all revenue and costs until the date that the products have been delivered and professional services, exclusive of post-contract customer support, have been completed. Deferred costs related to fully deferred contracts are recorded as a component of inventories in the consolidated balance sheet, and generally all other costs of sales are recognized when revenue recognition commences.

We record a provision for estimated returns and other allowances as a reduction of revenues in the same period that related revenues are recorded. Use of management estimates is required in connection with establishing and maintaining a sales allowance for expected returns and other credits, including rebates and returns. In making these estimates, we analyze historical returns and credits and other relevant factors. While we believe we can make reliable estimates regarding these matters, these estimates are inherently subjective. The amount and timing of our revenues for any period may be affected if actual product returns prove to be materially different from our estimates.

We record as revenues all amounts billed to customers for shipping and handling costs and record the actual shipping costs as a component of cost of revenues. Reimbursements received from customers for out-of-pocket expenses are recorded as revenues,

with related costs recorded as cost of revenues. We present revenues net of any taxes collected from customers and remitted to government authorities.

In the consolidated statements of operations, we classify revenues as product revenues or services revenues. For multiple element arrangements that include both product and service elements, including Implied Maintenance Release PCS, we evaluate available indicators of fair value and apply our judgment to reasonably classify the arrangement fee between product revenues and services revenues. The amount of multiple element arrangement fees classified as product and services revenues based on management estimates of fair value when VSOE of fair value for all elements of an arrangement does not exist could differ from amounts classified as product and service revenues if VSOE of fair value for all elements existed.

Stock-Based Compensation

We account for stock-based compensation at fair value. The vesting of stock options and restricted stock awards may be based on time, performance, market conditions, or a combination of time, performance and market conditions. In the future, we may grant stock awards, options, or other equity-based instruments allowed by our stock-based compensation plans, or a combination thereof, as part of our overall compensation strategy.

We generally use the Black-Scholes option pricing model to estimate the fair value of stock option grants with time-based vesting. The Black-Scholes option pricing model relies on a number of key assumptions to calculate estimated fair values. Our assumed dividend yield of zero is based on the fact that we have never paid cash dividends, we have no present intention to pay cash dividends and our current credit agreement precludes us from paying dividends. Our expected stock-price volatility assumption is based on actual historic stock volatility for periods equivalent to the expected term of the award. The assumed risk-free interest rate is the U.S. Treasury security rate with a term equal to the expected life of the option. The assumed expected life is based on company-specific historical experience, considering the exercise behavior of past grants and models the pattern of aggregate exercises. The fair values of restricted stock and restricted stock unit awards with time-based vesting are based on the intrinsic values of the awards at the date of grant as these awards have a purchase price of \$0.01 per share.

We have also issued stock option grants or restricted stock unit awards with vesting based on market conditions, which historically included Avid's stock price or performance conditions, generally our adjusted EBITDA. The fair values and derived service periods for all grants that include vesting based on market conditions are estimated using the Monte Carlo simulation method. For stock option grants that include vesting based on performance conditions, the fair values are estimated using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. For restricted stock unit awards that include vesting based on performance conditions, the fair values are estimated based on the intrinsic values of the awards at the date of grant as these awards have a purchase price of \$0.01 per share.

Income Tax Assets and Liabilities

We record deferred tax assets and liabilities based on the net tax effects of tax credits, operating loss carryforwards and temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes compared to the amounts used for income tax purposes. We regularly review our deferred tax assets for recoverability with consideration for such factors as historical losses, projected future taxable income and the expected timing of the reversals of existing temporary differences. A valuation allowance is recorded when it is more likely than not that some portion or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized.

On December 22, 2017, the act to provide for reconciliation pursuant to titles II and V of the concurrent resolution on the budget for fiscal year 2018, commonly known as the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act, or TCJA, was signed into law. The TCJA changed many aspects of U.S. corporate income taxation and included reduction of the corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21% , implementation of a territorial tax system and imposition of a tax on deemed repatriated earnings of foreign subsidiaries. At December 31, 2017, we had not completed our accounting for the tax effects of enactment of the Act; however, we made a reasonable estimate of the effects on our existing deferred tax balances and the one-time transition tax. We will continue to assess our provision for income taxes as future guidance is issued, but do not currently anticipate significant revisions will be necessary. Any such revisions will be treated in accordance with the measurement period guidance outlined in Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 118. See Note N for a discussion on the applicable portions of the TCJA to the Company and the provisional amounts included in the financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2017. The ultimate impact may differ from these provisional amounts, possibly materially, due to, among other things, additional analysis, changes in interpretations and assumptions the Company has

made, additional regulatory guidance that may be issued, and actions the Company may take as a result of the TCJA. The accounting is expected to be complete within the one year measurement period particularly after the 2017 U.S. corporate income tax return is filed in 2018.

Based on the magnitude of our gross deferred tax assets, which totaled approximately \$308.3 million at December 31, 2017, after revaluation for the TCJA U.S. corporate income tax rate reduction, and our level of historical U.S. losses, we have determined that the uncertainty regarding the realization of these assets is sufficient to warrant the need for a full valuation allowance against our U.S. deferred tax assets. We also determined that a valuation allowance is warranted on a portion of our foreign deferred tax assets.

Our assessment of the valuation allowance on our U.S. and foreign deferred tax assets could change in the future based on our levels of pre-tax income and other tax-related adjustments. Reversal of the valuation allowance in whole or in part would result in a non-cash reduction in income tax expense during the period of reversal. To the extent some or all of our valuation allowance is reversed, future financial statements would reflect an increase in non-cash income tax expense until such time as our deferred tax assets are fully utilized.

The amount of income taxes we pay is subject to our interpretation of applicable tax laws in the jurisdictions in which we file. We have taken and will continue to take tax positions based on our interpretation of such tax laws. There can be no assurance that a taxing authority will not have a different interpretation of applicable law and assess us with additional taxes. Should we be assessed with additional taxes, it could have a negative impact on our results of operations or financial condition.

We account for uncertainty in income taxes recognized in our financial statements by applying a two-step process to determine the amount of tax provision or benefit to be recognized. First, the tax position must be evaluated to determine the likelihood that it will be sustained upon examination by the taxing authorities, based on the technical merits of the position. If the tax position is deemed more likely than not to be sustained, the tax position is then assessed to determine the amount of provision or benefit to recognize in the financial statements. The amount of provision or benefit that may be recognized is the largest amount that has a greater than 50% likelihood of being realized upon ultimate settlement. Our provision for income taxes includes the effects of any resulting tax reserves, referred to as unrecognized tax benefits, that are considered appropriate as well as the related net interest and penalties.

Restructuring Charges and Accruals

We recognize facility-related restructuring charges upon exiting all or a portion of a leased facility and meeting cease-use and other requirements. The amount of restructuring charges is based on the fair value of the lease obligation for the abandoned space, which includes a sublease assumption that could be reasonably obtained.

Based on our policies for the calculation and payment of severance benefits, we account for employee-related restructuring charges as an ongoing benefit arrangement in accordance with ASC Topic 712, *Compensation - Nonretirement Postemployment Benefits*. Severance-related charges are accrued when it is determined that a liability has been incurred, which is when the expected severance payments are probable and can be reasonably estimated.

Restructuring charges require significant estimates and assumptions, including sub-lease income and severance period assumptions. Our estimates involve a number of risks and uncertainties, some of which are beyond our control, including future real estate market conditions and our ability to successfully enter into subleases or termination agreements with terms as favorable as those assumed when arriving at our estimates. We monitor these estimates and assumptions on at least a quarterly basis for changes in circumstances and any corresponding adjustments to the accrual are recorded in our statement of operations in the period when such changes are known.

RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

The following table sets forth certain items from our consolidated statements of operations as a percentage of net revenues for the periods indicated:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Net revenues:			
Product revenues	50.0 %	55.3 %	66.5 %
Services revenues	50.0 %	44.7 %	33.5 %
Total net revenues	100.0 %	100.0 %	100.0 %
Cost of revenues	42.2 %	35.0 %	39.1 %
Gross margin	57.8 %	65.0 %	60.9 %
Operating expenses:			
Research and development	16.3 %	15.9 %	19.0 %
Marketing and selling	25.4 %	21.6 %	24.2 %
General and administrative	12.8 %	12.0 %	14.7 %
Amortization of intangible assets	0.3 %	0.5 %	0.5 %
Restructuring costs, net	1.7 %	2.5 %	1.2 %
Total operating expenses	56.5 %	52.5 %	59.6 %
Operating income	1.3 %	12.5 %	1.3 %
Interest and other expense, net	(4.5)%	(3.7)%	(1.2)%
(Loss) income before income taxes	(3.2)%	8.8 %	0.1 %
Benefit from income taxes	— %	(0.6)%	(0.4)%
Net (loss) income	(3.2)%	9.4 %	0.5 %

Net Revenues

Our net revenues are derived mainly from sales of video and audio hardware and software products and solutions for digital media content production, management and distribution, and related professional services and maintenance contracts. We commonly sell large, complex solutions to our customers that, due to their strategic nature, have long lead times where the timing of order execution and fulfillment can be difficult to predict. In addition, the rapid evolution of the media industry is changing our customers' needs, businesses and revenue models which is influencing their short-term and long-term purchasing decisions. As a result of these factors, the timing and amount of product revenue recognized related to these large orders, as well as the services associated with them, can fluctuate from quarter to quarter and cause significant volatility in our quarterly and annual operating results. See the risk factors discussed in Part I - Item 1A under the heading "Risk Factors" of this Form 10-K.

Net Revenues for the Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016

	(dollars in thousands)			
	2017	Change		2016
	Net Revenues	\$	%	Net Revenues
Video products and solutions	\$ 114,787	\$ (40,621)	(26.1)%	\$ 155,408
Audio products and solutions	94,674	(33,028)	(25.9)%	127,702
Total products and solutions	209,461	(73,649)	(26.0)%	283,110
Services	209,542	(19,278)	(8.4)%	228,820
Total net revenues	\$ 419,003	\$ (92,927)	(18.2)%	\$ 511,930

Net Revenues for the Years Ended December 31, 2016 and 2015

	(dollars in thousands)			
	2016	Change		2015
	Net Revenues	\$	%	Net Revenues
Video products and solutions	\$ 155,408	\$ (46,151)	(22.9)%	\$ 201,559
Audio products and solutions	127,702	(7,110)	(5.3)%	134,812
Total products and solutions	283,110	(53,261)	(15.8)%	336,371
Services	228,820	59,596	35.2%	169,224
Total net revenues	\$ 511,930	\$ 6,335	1.3%	\$ 505,595

The following table sets forth the percentage of our net revenues attributable to geographic regions for the periods indicated:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
United States	38%	36%	37%
Other Americas	7%	8%	7%
Europe, Middle East and Africa	39%	40%	41%
Asia-Pacific	16%	16%	15%

Video Products and Solutions Revenues

2017 Compared to 2016

Video products and solutions revenues decreased \$40.6 million , or 26.1% , for 2017, compared to 2016. The decrease in video revenues was primarily due to lower amortization of deferred revenues attributable to transactions executed on or before December 31, 2010. As a result of our adoption of ASU No. 2009-13 and ASU No. 2009-14 on January 1, 2011, many of our product orders now qualify for upfront revenue recognition; however, prior to adoption of this accounting guidance, the same orders required ratable recognition over periods of up to eight years. Deferred revenue associated with transactions executed prior to the adoption of ASU No. 2009-13 and ASU No. 2009-14 was largely amortized in 2016.

2016 Compared to 2015

Video products and solutions revenues decreased \$46.2 million , or 22.9% , for 2016, compared to 2015. The decrease during 2016 was primarily due to delayed purchasing decisions of shared storage solutions by customers anticipating our next-generation shared storage product. Video products and solutions revenues for 2015 were also higher due to the determination during 2015 that Implied Maintenance Release PCS on Media Composer 8.0 had ended which resulted in increased product revenue for the prior period reflecting the recognition of older orders that then qualified for the residual method of accounting. Also contributing to the decrease in revenues were more volatile market conditions in the Tier 1 enterprise space, particularly in Europe, and the previously discussed lower amortization of deferred revenues attributable to transactions executed on or before December 31, 2010.

Audio Products and Solutions Revenues

2017 Compared to 2016

Audio products and solutions revenues decreased \$33.0 million , or 25.9% , for 2017, compared to 2016. The decrease in audio revenues was primarily due to the accelerated revenue recognition of Pro Tools 12 during 2016 as a result of the cessation of Implied Maintenance Release PCS for Pro Tools, which revenue did not recur in 2017. The decrease was also due to the previously discussed lower amortization of deferred revenues attributable to transactions executed on or before December 31, 2010.

2016 Compared to 2015

Audio products and solutions revenues decreased \$7.1 million , or 5.3% , for 2016, compared to 2015. The decrease in audio revenues was primarily due to weaker sales of our Pro Tools HD systems, as well as the previously discussed lower amortization of deferred revenues attributable to transactions executed on or before December 31, 2010. The decrease was partially offset by the accelerated revenue recognition of Pro Tools 12 due to the determination during 2016 that Implied Maintenance Release PCS on Pro Tools 12 no longer exists. The cessation of Implied Maintenance Release PCS for Pro Tools resulted in the recognition of orders received in 2015 that would have qualified for earlier recognition using the residual method of accounting.

Services Revenues

2017 Compared to 2016

Services revenues are derived primarily from maintenance contracts, as well as professional services and training. The \$19.3 million , or 8.4% , decrease in services revenues for 2017, compared to 2016, was primarily due to the accelerated revenue recognition of maintenance contracts and increasing conversion rates of new maintenance contracts into revenue as the result of the determination that Implied Maintenance Release PCS on Pro Tools 12 no longer existed during 2016. The previously discussed lower amortization of deferred revenues attributable to transactions executed on or before December 31, 2010 also contributed to the decreases.

2016 Compared to 2015

The \$59.6 million , or 35.2% , increase in services revenues for 2016, compared to 2015, was primarily the result of the determination that Implied Maintenance Release PCS on Pro Tools 12 no longer existed, which resulted in (i) accelerated revenue recognition of existing maintenance contracts that were previously being recognized over a longer expected period of Implied Maintenance Release PCS rather than the contractual maintenance period and (ii) increasing conversion rates of new maintenance contracts into revenue, since new maintenance contracts are now recognized over their contractual term rather than a much longer period of Implied Maintenance Release PCS. The increases were partially offset by the previously discussed lower amortization of deferred revenues attributable to transactions executed on or before December 31, 2010.

Revenue Backlog

At December 31, 2017 , we had revenue backlog of approximately \$536 million , of which approximately \$243 million is expected to be recognized in the next twelve months, compared to \$429 million at December 31, 2016 . Revenue backlog, as we define it, consists of firm orders received and includes both (i) orders where the customer has paid in advance of our performance obligations being fulfilled, which are reflected as deferred revenues in our balance sheet and (ii) orders for future product deliveries or services that have not yet been invoiced by us. Revenue backlog associated with arrangement consideration paid in advance primarily consists of deferred revenue related to (i) the undelivered portion of annual support contracts, (ii) software arrangements for which VSOE of fair value of undelivered elements does not exist, (iii) Implied Maintenance Release PCS performance obligations, and (iv) in-process installations that are subject to substantive customer acceptance provisions. Revenue backlog associated with orders for future product deliveries and services where cash has not been received primarily consists of (i) product orders received but not yet shipped, (ii) professional services not yet rendered and (iii) future years of multi-year support agreements not yet billed.

The adoption of ASU No. 2014-09, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (ASC 606)*, on January 1, 2018, which will require virtually all product sales to be recognized as revenue upon delivery, will further impact our deferred revenue balances since, upon adoption using the modified prospective method, we will be required to record a cumulative reduction of deferred revenue for any transaction that had qualified for subscription accounting under legacy GAAP. Since deferred revenue is a component of our backlog, the adoption of ASC 606 will also result in a decrease in our backlog. While we are still finalizing the impact of this new accounting standard, we expect between \$95 million and \$115 million of the deferred revenue component of backlog recorded as of December 31, 2017 will be eliminated upon adoption of ASC 606 on January 1, 2018. Upon adoption of ASC 606, we expect to recognize a greater proportion of revenue upon delivery of our product, whereas some of our current product sales are initially recorded in deferred revenue and recognized over a long period of time. Accordingly, our operating results may become more volatile as a result of the adoption.

Orders included in revenue backlog may be reduced, canceled or deferred by our customers. The expected timing of the recognition of revenue backlog as revenue is based on our current estimates and could change based on a number of factors, including (i) the timing of delivery of products and services, (ii) customer cancellations or change orders, or (iii) changes in the estimated period of time Implied Maintenance Release PCS is provided to customers. As there is no industry standard definition of revenue backlog, our reported revenue backlog may not be comparable with other companies. Revenue backlog as of any particular date should not be relied upon as indicative of our net revenues for any future period.

Cost of Revenues, Gross Profit and Gross Margin Percentage

Cost of revenues consists primarily of costs associated with:

- procurement of components and finished goods;
- assembly, testing and distribution of finished products;
- warehousing;
- customer support related to maintenance;
- royalties for third-party software and hardware included in our products;
- amortization of technology; and
- providing professional services and training.

Amortization of technology included in cost of revenues represents the amortization of developed technology assets acquired as part of acquisitions and is described further in the Amortization of Intangible Assets section below.

Costs of Revenues for the Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016

	(dollars in thousands)			
	2017	Change		2016
	Costs	\$	%	Costs
Products	\$ 112,606	\$ 1,027	0.9%	\$ 111,579
Services	56,481	(3,347)	(5.6)%	59,828
Amortization of intangible assets	7,800	—	—%	7,800
Total cost of revenues	<u>176,887</u>	<u>(2,320)</u>	<u>(1.3)%</u>	<u>179,207</u>
Gross profit	\$ 242,116	\$ (90,607)	(27.2)%	\$ 332,723

Costs of Revenues for the Years Ended December 31, 2016 and 2015

	(dollars in thousands)			
	2016	Change		2015
	Costs	\$	%	Costs
Products	\$ 111,579	\$ (20,302)	(15.4)%	\$ 131,881
Services	59,828	(1,673)	(2.7)%	61,501
Amortization of intangible assets	7,800	3,737	92.0%	4,063
Total costs of revenues	<u>179,207</u>	<u>(18,238)</u>	<u>(9.2)%</u>	<u>197,445</u>
Gross profit	\$ 332,723	\$ 24,573	8.0%	\$ 308,150

Gross Margin Percentage

Gross margin percentage, which is net revenues less costs of revenues divided by net revenues, fluctuates based on factors such as the mix of products sold, the cost and proportion of third-party hardware and software included in the systems sold, the offering of product upgrades, price discounts and other sales-promotion programs, the distribution channels through which products are sold, the timing of new product introductions, sales of aftermarket hardware products such as disk drives and currency exchange-rate fluctuations. Our total gross margin percentage for 2017 decreased to 57.8% , from 65.0% for 2016 . The decrease was primarily due to the decreased revenue from our products and services as discussed above, including the impact of the cessation of Pro Tools Implied Maintenance Release PCS in 2016, partially offset by cost savings resulting from our programs to reduce costs and increase operational efficiencies.

Gross Margin % for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015

	2017 Gross Margin %	Decrease in Gross Margin %	2016 Gross Margin %	(Decrease) Increase in Gross Margin %	2015 Gross Margin %
Products	46.2%	(14.4)%	60.6%	(0.2)%	60.8%
Services	73.0%	(0.9)%	73.9%	10.2%	63.7%
Total Gross Margin	57.8%	(7.2)%	65.0%	4.1%	60.9%

2017 Compared to 2016

The products gross margin percentage for 2017 decreased to 46.2% from 60.6% for 2016 , and the services gross margin percentage decreased 0.9% from 2016. The decreases were primarily due to the decreased revenue from our products and services as discussed above, including the impact of the cessation of Pro Tools Implied Maintenance Release PCS in 2016, partially offset by cost savings resulting from our programs to reduce costs and increase operational efficiencies.

2016 Compared to 2015

The products gross margin percentage for 2016 was effectively unchanged from 2015. The increase in services gross margin percentage for 2016, compared to 2015, was attributable to the revenue recognized as a result of the conclusion that Implied Maintenance Release PCS on Pro Tools 12 ended in 2016, as well as the effects of our cost efficiency program.

Operating Expenses and Operating Income

Operating Expenses and Operating Income for the Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016

	(dollars in thousands)			
	2017	Change		2016
	Expenses	\$	%	Expenses
Research and development expenses	\$ 68,212	\$ (13,352)	(16.4)%	\$ 81,564
Marketing and selling expenses	106,257	(4,081)	(3.7)%	110,338
General and administrative expenses	53,892	(7,579)	(12.3)%	61,471
Amortization of intangible assets	1,450	(1,048)	(42.0)%	2,498
Restructuring costs, net	7,059	(5,778)	(45.0)%	12,837
Total operating expenses	<u>\$ 236,870</u>	<u>\$ (31,838)</u>	<u>(11.8)%</u>	<u>\$ 268,708</u>
Operating income	\$ 5,246	\$ (58,769)	(91.8)%	\$ 64,015

Operating Expenses and Operating Income for the Years Ended December 31, 2016 and 2015

	(dollars in thousands)			
	2016	Change		2015
	Expenses	\$	%	Expenses
Research and development expenses	\$ 81,564	\$ (14,334)	(14.9)%	\$ 95,898
Marketing and selling expenses	110,338	(12,173)	(9.9)%	122,511
General and administrative expenses	61,471	(12,638)	(17.1)%	74,109
Amortization of intangible assets	2,498	144	6.1%	2,354
Restructuring costs, net	12,837	6,532	103.6%	6,305
Total operating expenses	<u>\$ 268,708</u>	<u>\$ (32,469)</u>	<u>(10.8)%</u>	<u>\$ 301,177</u>
Operating income	\$ 64,015	\$ 57,042	818.0%	\$ 6,973

Research and Development Expenses

Research and development, or R&D, expenses include costs associated with the development of new products and the enhancement of existing products, and consist primarily of employee salaries and benefits; facilities costs; depreciation; costs for consulting and temporary employees; and prototype and other development expenses. R&D expenses decreased \$13.4 million, or 16.4%, during the year ended December 31, 2017, compared to 2016. The table below provides further details regarding the changes in components of R&D expense.

Year-Over-Year Change in R&D Expenses for the Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016

(dollars in thousands)

	2017 Decrease From 2016		2016 Decrease From 2015	
	\$	%	\$	%
Personnel-related	\$ (7,074)	(15.6)%	\$ (6,696)	(12.6)%
Facilities and information technology	(2,626)	(15.9)%	(358)	(2.1)%
Consulting and outside services	(2,594)	(17.3)%	(3,297)	(18.4)%
Computer hardware and supplies	(621)	(36.0)%	(3,646)	(67.9)%
Other expenses	(437)	(14.6)%	(337)	(13.0)%
Total research and development expenses decrease	<u>\$ (13,352)</u>	<u>(16.4)%</u>	<u>\$ (14,334)</u>	<u>(14.9)%</u>

2017 Compared to 2016

The decreases in all R&D expense categories for 2017 , compared to 2016 , were primarily the result of our cost efficiency program.

2016 Compared to 2015

The decrease in personnel-related expenses for 2016, compared to 2015, was primarily the result of our cost efficiency program. The decreases in computer hardware and supplies and consulting and outside services were primarily due to the timing of certain development projects as we develop new products and solutions consistent with our strategic vision. The computer hardware and supplies expenses for 2015 were also higher due to the development of VENUE S6L.

Marketing and Selling Expenses

Marketing and selling expenses consist primarily of employee salaries and benefits for selling, marketing and pre-sales customer support personnel; commissions; travel expenses; advertising and promotional expenses; web design costs and facilities costs. Marketing and selling expenses decreased \$4.1 million , or 3.7% , during the year ended December 31, 2017 , compared to 2016 . The table below provides further details regarding the changes in components of marketing and selling expense.

Year-Over-Year Change in Marketing and Selling Expenses for Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016

(dollars in thousands)

	2017 (Decrease)/Increase From 2016		2016 (Decrease)/Increase From 2015	
	\$	%	\$	%
Personnel-related	\$ (6,297)	(8.0)%	\$ (12,376)	(14.4)%
Foreign-exchange losses	5,724	(920.0)%	607	49.4%
Advertising and promotions	(1,855)	(20.3)%	(1,041)	(19.4)%
Consulting and outside services	(1,285)	(26.7)%	(3,224)	(26.0)%
Other expenses	(1,107)	(37.4)%	747	6.7%
Facilities and information technology	739	5.0%	3,114	34.1%
Total marketing and selling expenses decrease	<u>\$ (4,081)</u>	<u>(3.7)%</u>	<u>\$ (12,173)</u>	<u>(9.9)%</u>

2017 Compared to 2016

The decreases in personnel-related, advertising and promotions, consulting and outside services expenses for 2017 , compared to 2016 , were primarily the result of our cost efficiency program. The decrease in other expenses for 2017 was primarily due to the decrease in bad debt reserve. During 2017 , net foreign exchange losses (specifically, resulting from foreign currency denominated

transactions and the revaluation of foreign currency denominated assets and liabilities), which are included in marketing and selling expenses, were \$5.1 million, compared to gains of \$0.6 million in 2016 .

2016 Compared to 2015

The decrease in personnel-related expenses for 2016, compared to 2015, was primarily due to lower headcount, less travel expenses and commission expenses. The decreases in consulting and outside services expenses and advertising and promotional expenses were primarily the result of our cost efficiency program. The increase in facilities and information technology expenses was primarily due to Avid.com redesign and web infrastructure build out related costs that were capitalized in 2015 but not depreciated until 2016, and also due to the increased rent expenses associated with our Philippines office for our customer care services in 2016. The increase in other expenses for 2016 was due to the increased bad debt reserve. During 2016, net foreign exchange gains (specifically, resulting from foreign currency denominated transactions and the revaluation of foreign currency denominated assets and liabilities), which are included in marketing and selling expenses, were \$0.6 million, compared to gains of \$1.2 million in 2015.

General and Administrative Expenses

General and administrative, or G&A, expenses consist primarily of employee salaries and benefits for administrative, executive, finance and legal personnel; audit, legal and strategic consulting fees; and insurance, information systems and facilities costs. Information systems and facilities costs reported within general and administrative expenses are net of allocations to other expenses categories. G&A expenses decreased \$7.6 million , or 12.3% , during the year ended December 31, 2017 , compared to 2016 . The table below provides further details regarding the changes in components of general and administrative expense.

Year-Over-Year Change in G&A Expenses for the Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016

	(dollars in thousands)			
	2017 (Decrease)/Increase From 2016		2016 (Decrease)/Increase From 2015	
	\$	%	\$	%
Consulting and outside services	\$ (5,471)	(29.5)%	\$ (1,115)	(6.6)%
Facilities and information technology	(1,179)	(11.6)%	754	8.0%
Acquisition and related integration	(789)	(100.0)%	(8,970)	(80.9)%
Other expenses	(297)	(5.8)%	(367)	(4.5)%
Personnel-related	157	0.6%	(2,940)	(10.3)%
Total general and administrative expenses decrease	<u>\$ (7,579)</u>	(12.3)%	<u>\$ (12,638)</u>	(17.1)%

2017 Compared to 2016

The decrease in consulting and outside services expenses for 2017 , compared to 2016 , was primarily the result of legal settlement gains offsetting legal professional services expenses in 2017. The decrease in facilities and information technology was primarily the result of our cost efficiency program. The decrease in acquisition and related integration expenses was due to Orad acquisition related integration work completed in 2016.

2016 Compared to 2015

The decrease in acquisition and related integration expenses for 2016, compared to 2015, was primarily the result of more outside professional and consulting services used during 2015 when we actively engaged in acquisition related activities. The decrease in personnel-related expenses was primarily the result of our cost efficiency program and decreased stock-based compensation costs. The decrease in consulting and outside services expenses was primarily the result of decreases in litigation expenses and contractors costs. The increase in facilities and information technology expenses was primarily due to the rent expenses associated with Orad Israel facility, which was acquired in June 2015, and our new facility in Boca Raton, Florida opened in March 2016.

Amortization of Intangible Assets

Intangible assets result from acquisitions and include developed technology, customer-related intangibles, trade names and other identifiable intangible assets with finite lives. These intangible assets are amortized using the straight-line method over the estimated useful lives of such assets, which are generally two years to twelve years. Amortization of developed technology is recorded within cost of revenues. Amortization of customer-related intangibles, trade names and other identifiable intangible assets is recorded within operating expenses.

Year-Over-Year Change in Amortization of Intangible Assets for the Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016

	(dollars in thousands)			
	2017 Decrease From 2016		2016 Increase From 2015	
	\$	%	\$	%
Amortization of intangible assets recorded in cost of revenues	\$ —	—%	\$ 3,737	92.0%
Amortization of intangible assets recorded in operating expenses	(1,048)	(42.0)%	144	6.1%
Total amortization of intangible assets	\$ (1,048)	(10.2)%	\$ 3,881	60.5%

2017 Compared to 2016

The decrease in amortization of intangible assets for 2017, compared to 2016, was the result of two intangible assets, customer relationships acquired through acquisitions, fully amortized in 2016. We expect amortization of intangible assets to be approximately \$9.3 million in 2018 and \$4.3 million in 2019. See Note I, Intangible Assets and Goodwill, to our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of the Form 10-K for further information regarding our identifiable intangible assets.

2016 Compared to 2015

The increase in amortization of intangible assets for 2016, compared to 2015, was the result of the intangible assets that we acquired through our acquisition of Orad in June 2015.

Restructuring Costs, Net

In February 2016 we committed to a restructuring plan that encompassed a series of measures intended to allow us to more efficiently operate in a leaner, and more directed cost structure. These included reductions in our workforce, facilities consolidation, transferring certain business processes to lower cost regions, and reducing other third-party services costs.

During the year ended December 31, 2015, we recorded restructuring costs of \$5.8 million, which represented an initial elimination of 111 positions worldwide during January and February of 2016. We also recorded restructuring costs revisions of \$0.5 million in 2015 based on the updated sublease assumption for our Mountain View, California facility that was partially abandoned in 2012.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, we recorded restructuring costs of \$10.0 million, which represented an additional 138 positions eliminated during 2016 and 141 positions eliminated during the first quarter of 2017. We also recorded \$2.0 million of facility restructuring charge for the partial closure of the facilities in Burlington, and revisions of \$0.8 million based on the updated sublease assumption for our Mountain View, California facility that was partially abandoned in 2012.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, we recorded restructuring costs of \$3.1 million for an additional 102 positions eliminated during 2017 and the first quarter of 2018, and recoveries of \$1.1 million as a result of revised severance estimates. During 2017, we further consolidated workspaces and vacated our facilities in Taiwan and Boca Raton, Florida, and a portion of facilities in Burlington, Massachusetts, Mt View, California and Pinewood, U.K. We recorded \$5.1 million of restructuring charge for the closure and partial closure of the facilities, which included \$3.2 million of related leasehold assets write-off.

Interest and Other Income (Expense), Net

Interest and other income (expense), net, generally consists of interest income and interest expense.

Interest and Other Income (Expense) for the Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016

	(dollars in thousands)			
	2017 Income (Expense)	Change		2016 Income (Expense)
		\$	%	
Interest income	\$ 535	\$ 535	100.0%	\$ —
Interest expense	(19,964)	(1,061)	5.6%	(18,903)
Other income (expense), net	761	529	228.0%	232
Total interest and other income (expense), net	<u>\$ (18,668)</u>	<u>\$ 3</u>	<u>—%</u>	<u>\$ (18,671)</u>

Interest and Other Income (Expense) for the Years Ended December 31, 2016 and 2015

	(dollars in thousands)			
	2016 Income (Expense)	Change		2015 Income (Expense)
		\$	%	
Interest income	\$ —	\$ (113)	(100.0)%	\$ 113
Interest expense	(18,903)	(12,557)	197.9%	(6,346)
Other income (expense), net	232	407	(232.6)%	(175)
Total interest and other income (expense), net	<u>\$ (18,671)</u>	<u>\$ (12,263)</u>	<u>191.4%</u>	<u>\$ (6,408)</u>

2017 Compared to 2016

The increase in interest expense for 2017 compared to 2016, was due to the interest on our Term Loan and Notes, and accretion of debt discount related to the Notes. See Note Q, Long-Term Debt and Credit Agreement, to our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Form 10-K for further information.

2016 Compared to 2015

The increase in interest expense for 2016 compared to 2015, was due to the interest on our Term Loan and Notes, which were issued in mid-2015, and accretion of debt discount related to the Notes.

Provision for (Benefit from) Income Taxes

Provision for (Benefit from) Income Taxes for the Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016

	(dollars in thousands)			
	2017 Provision	Change		2016 Benefit
		\$	%	
Provision for (Benefit from) income taxes	\$ 133	\$ 3,008	(104.6)%	\$ (2,875)

Benefit from Income Taxes for the Years Ended December 31, 2016 and 2015

	(dollars in thousands)			
	2016 Benefit	Change		2015 Provision
		\$	%	
Benefit from income taxes	\$ (2,875)	\$ (960)	50.1%	\$ (1,915)

Our effective tax rate, which represents our tax provision as a percentage of income before tax, was (1.0)% , (6.3)% and (338.9)% , respectively, for 2017 , 2016 and 2015 .

The increase in our 2017 provision was primarily driven by the non-recurring \$3.2 million discrete benefit in 2016 for the change in our uncertain tax position related to the foreign tax implications arising from changes in revenue recognition. Our 2017 provision includes a \$0.8 million benefit related to refundable alternative minimum, or AMT, tax credits resulting from the TCJA. This benefit was largely offset by an \$0.8 million increase in our reserve for uncertain tax positions related to an Israel audit issue. Our 2016 benefit from income taxes was primarily due to a change in our uncertain tax position related to the foreign tax implications arising from changes in revenue recognition. The amount of the benefit included in the tax provision was \$3.2 million. Our 2015 benefit included a \$6.5 million benefit resulting from the creation of a deferred tax liability associated with the portion of our Notes offering that was classified within stockholders' equity. The benefit was partially offset by increased foreign taxes which included a \$2.3 million provision for uncertain tax positions. After taking into account these tax items, the remaining 2016 tax benefit increase is due to a decrease in foreign taxes, primarily driven by the \$1.5 million amortization of a deferred tax liability related to acquired intangible assets.

We early adopted ASU No. 2016-09 during the second quarter of 2016 on a modified retrospective basis. The adoption of new guidance had no impact on income taxes because of our significant accumulated deferred tax assets including the tax effects of net operating loss and tax credit carryovers. The realization of the net deferred tax assets is dependent upon the generation of sufficient future taxable income in the applicable tax jurisdictions. We regularly review our deferred tax assets for recoverability with consideration for such factors as historical losses, projected future taxable income, the expected timing of the reversals of existing temporary differences, and tax planning strategies. ASC Topic 740, Income Taxes, requires us to record a valuation allowance when it is more likely than not that some portion or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized. Based on the magnitude of our deferred tax assets at December 31, 2017 and our level of historical U.S. losses, we have determined that the uncertainty regarding the realization of these assets is sufficient to warrant the need for a full valuation allowance against our U.S. deferred tax assets. We have also determined that a valuation allowance is warranted on a portion of our foreign deferred tax assets.

On December 22, 2017, the TCJA was signed into law. The TCJA changed many aspects of U.S. corporate income taxation and included reduction of the corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21% , implementation of a territorial tax system and imposition of a tax on deemed repatriated earnings of foreign subsidiaries. At December 31, 2017, we had not completed our accounting for the tax effects of enactment of the TCJA; however, we made a reasonable estimate of the effects on our existing deferred tax balances and the one-time transition tax. We will continue to assess our provision for income taxes as future guidance is issued, but do not currently anticipate significant revisions will be necessary. Any such revisions will be treated in accordance with the measurement period guidance outlined in Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 118. See Note N for a discussion of the portions of the TCJA applicable to us and the provisional amounts included in the financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2017. The ultimate impact may differ from these provisional amounts, possibly materially, due to, among other things, additional analysis, changes in interpretations and assumptions we have made, additional regulatory guidance that may be issued, and actions we may take as a result of the TCJA. The accounting is expected to be complete within the one year measurement period particularly after the 2017 U.S. corporate income tax return is filed in 2018.

LIQUIDITY AND CAPITAL RESOURCES

Liquidity and Sources of Cash

Our principal sources of liquidity include cash and cash equivalents totaling \$57.2 million as of December 31, 2017. We have generally funded operations in recent years through the use of existing cash balances, supplemented from time to time with the proceeds of long-term debt and borrowings under our credit facilities.

Our cash requirements vary depending on factors such as the growth of the business, changes in working capital, capital expenditures, and obligations under our cost efficiency program. We expect to operate the business and execute our strategic initiatives principally with funds generated from operations, remaining net proceeds from the term loan borrowings under the Financing Agreement, and draws of up to a maximum of \$10.0 million under the Financing Agreement's revolving credit facility. We anticipate that we will have sufficient internal and external sources of liquidity to fund operations and anticipated working capital and other expected cash needs for at least the next 12 months as well as for the foreseeable future.

In February 2016 we committed to a cost efficiency program that encompassed a series of measures intended to allow us to more efficiently operate in a leaner, and more directed cost structure. These measures include reductions in our workforce, facilities consolidation, transferring certain business processes to lower cost regions and reducing other third-party services costs. The cost efficiency program was substantially completed as of December 31, 2017.

Financing Agreement

On February 26, 2016, we entered into the Financing Agreement with the lenders party thereto, or the Lenders. Pursuant to the Financing Agreement, the Lenders agreed to provide us with (a) a term loan in the aggregate principal amount of \$100.0 million, or the Term Loan, and (b) a revolving credit facility of up to a maximum of \$5.0 million in borrowings outstanding at any time, or the Credit Facility. We borrowed the full amount of the Term Loan, or \$100.0 million, as of the closing date, but did not borrow any amount under the Credit Facility as of the Closing Date. All outstanding loans under the Financing Agreement will become due and payable on the earlier of February 26, 2021 and the date that is 30 days prior to June 15, 2020 if the remaining \$123.0 million in outstanding principal of the Notes has not been repaid or refinanced by such time. Prior to the maturity of the Credit Facility, any amounts borrowed under the Credit Facility may be repaid and, subject to the terms and conditions of the Financing Agreement, reborrowed in whole or in part without penalty.

On March 14, 2017, we entered into an Amendment to our Financing Agreement, with the lenders party thereto. The Amendment modifies the covenant requiring us to maintain a Leverage Ratio (defined to mean the ratio of (a) consolidated total funded indebtedness to (b) consolidated EBITDA) such that following the Effective Date, we are required to keep a Leverage Ratio of no greater than 3.50:1.00 for the four quarters ending March 31, 2017, 4.20:1.00 for the four quarters ending June 30, 2017, 4.75:1.00 for the four quarters ending September 30, 2017, 4.80:1.00 for the four quarters ending December 31, 2017, 4.40:1 for each of the four quarters ending March 31, 2018 through March 31, 2019, respectively, and thereafter declining over time from 3.50:1.00 to 2.50:1.00. Following the Effective Date, interest accrues on outstanding borrowings under the Credit Facility and the Term Loan at a rate of either the LIBOR Rate (as defined in the Financing Agreement) plus 7.25% or a Reference Rate (as defined in the Financing Agreement) plus 6.25%, at the option of Avid.

On November 9, 2017 (the "Amendment No. 2 Effective Date"), we entered into the Second Amendment to the Financing Agreement. The Second Amendment extended an additional \$15.0 million loan to the Company, thereby increasing the aggregate principal amount of the Term Loan to \$115.0 million. The Second Amendment also increased the amount of available revolving credit by \$5.0 million to an aggregate amount of \$10.0 million. The additional \$15.0 million term loan must be repaid in quarterly principal payments of \$0.2 million commencing in March 2018. The Second Amendment also granted us the ability to use up to \$15.0 million to purchase the Notes and modified the definition of consolidated EBITDA used in the Leverage Ratio calculation to adjust for expected changes in deferred revenue due to the adoption of ASC 606.

Financial terms and prepayments. Effective with the Amendment to the Financing Agreement, interest accrues on outstanding borrowings under the Term Loan and the Credit Facility at a rate of either the LIBOR Rate (as defined in the Financing Agreement) plus 7.25% or a Reference Rate (as defined in the Financing Agreement) plus 6.25%, at our option. The Term Loan is subject to a \$1.25 million mandatory principal amortization per quarter commencing in June 2016. As a result of the Second Amendment, the additional \$15.0 million borrowed is subject quarterly principal payments of \$0.2 million commencing in March

2018. We may prepay all or any portion of the Term Loan prior to its stated maturity, subject to the payment of certain fees based on the amount repaid. We must pay to the Lenders, on a monthly basis, an unused line fee at a rate of 0.5% per annum on an amount equal to (1) the total lending commitments under the Credit Facility less (2) the average daily amount of the outstanding borrowings under the Credit Facility during the immediately preceding month. During the term of the Credit Facility, we are entitled to reduce the maximum amounts of the Lenders' commitments under the Credit Facility, subject to the payment of certain fees based on the amount of any reduction. In addition, subject to limited exceptions we will be required to prepay the borrowings under the Financing Agreement with proceeds it receives from specified events, including sales of assets, tax refunds, legal judgments and settlements, third party indemnities insurance proceeds and condemnation awards. Each year we will be required to prepay the borrowings under the Financing Agreement in an amount equal to 50% of our excess cash flow.

Collateral and guarantees. We and our subsidiary, Avid Technology Worldwide, Inc., or Avid Worldwide, granted a security interest on substantially all of our assets to secure the obligations of all obligors under the Term Loan and the Credit Facility. Avid Worldwide provided a guarantee of all our obligations under the Financing Agreement. Our future subsidiaries (other than certain foreign and immaterial subsidiaries) are also required to become a party to the applicable security agreements and guarantee the obligations under the Financing Agreement.

The Financing Agreement contains restrictive covenants that are customary for an agreement of this kind, including, for example, covenants that restrict us from incurring additional indebtedness, granting liens, making investments and restricted payments, making acquisitions, paying dividends, and engaging in transactions with affiliates. Certain exceptions to these restrictive covenants are not available in the event our liquidity (defined as cash held in U.S. accounts and availability under the Credit Facility) is less than \$30 million.

Events of default. The Financing Agreement contains customary events of default under which our payment obligations may be accelerated. These events of default include, among others, failure to pay amounts payable under the Financing Agreement when due, breach of representations and warranties, failure to perform covenants, a change of control, default or acceleration of material indebtedness, certain judgments and certain impairments to the collateral.

Financial and other covenants. The Financing Agreement, as amended, contains customary representations and warranties and covenants. These include covenants requiring us to maintain a Leverage Ratio (defined to mean the ratio of (a) total funded indebtedness to (b) consolidated EBITDA) of no greater than 3.50:1.00 for the four quarters ending March 31, 2017, 4.20:1.00 for the four quarters ending June 30, 2017, 4.75:1.00 for the four quarters ending September 30, 2017, 4.80:1.00 for the four quarters ending December 31, 2017, 4.40:1 for each of the four quarters ending March 31, 2018 through March 31, 2019, respectively, and thereafter declining over time from 3.50:1.00 to 2.50:1.00. The Financing Agreement also restricts us from making capital expenditures in excess of \$20 million in any fiscal year. As of December 31, 2017, we were in compliance with these covenants.

Our ability to satisfy the Leverage Ratio covenant in the future is heavily dependent on our ability to increase bookings and billings above levels experienced over the last twelve months. In recent quarters, we have experienced volatility in bookings and billings resulting from, among other things, (i) our transition towards subscription and recurring revenue streams and the resulting decline in traditional upfront product sales, (ii) dramatic changes in the media industry and the impact it has on our customers, (iii) the impact of new and anticipated product launches and features, and (iv) volatility in currency rates. In addition to the impact of new bookings and billings, GAAP revenues recognized as the result of the existence of Implied Maintenance Release PCS in prior periods completed in 2017, which will have an adverse impact on our Leverage Ratio.

In the event bookings and billings in future quarters are lower than we currently anticipate, we may be forced to take remedial actions which could include, among other things (and where allowed by the Lenders), (i) further cost reductions, (ii) seeking replacement financing, (iii) raising additional equity or (iv) disposing of certain assets or businesses. Such remedial actions, which may not be available on favorable terms or at all, could have a material adverse impact on our business. If we are not in compliance with the Leverage Ratio and are unable to obtain an amendment or waiver, such noncompliance may result in an event of default under the Financing Agreement, which could permit acceleration of the outstanding indebtedness under the Financing Agreement and require us to repay such indebtedness before the scheduled due date. If an event of default were to occur, we might not have sufficient funds available to make the payments required. If we are unable to repay amounts owed, the Lenders may be entitled to foreclose on and sell substantially all of our assets, which secure our borrowings under the Financing Agreement.

2.00% Convertible Senior Notes

On June 15, 2015, we issued \$125.0 million aggregate principal amount of our 2.00% Convertible Senior Notes due 2020, or the Notes. The net proceeds from the offering were \$120.3 million after deducting the offering expenses. The Notes pay interest semi-annually on June 15 and December 15 of each year, at an annual rate of 2.00% and mature on June 15, 2020 unless earlier repurchased or converted in accordance with their terms prior to such date. In connection with the offering of the Notes, on June 9, 2015, we entered into a capped call derivative transaction with a third party, or the Capped Call. The Capped Call is expected generally to reduce the potential dilution to the common stock and/or offset any cash payments we may be required to make in excess of the principal amount upon conversion of the Notes in the event that the market price per share of the common stock is greater than the strike price of the Capped Call. The Capped Call has a strike price of \$21.94 and a cap price of \$26.00 and is exercisable by us when and if the Notes are converted. The Capped Call expires on June 15, 2020.

We have repurchased some of the Notes for cash and, as a result, as of December 31, 2017, the outstanding principal amount of the Notes was \$123.0 million .

Cash Flows

The following table summarizes our cash flows for the years ended December 31, 2017 , 2016 and 2015 (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Net cash provided by (used in) operating activities	\$ 8,936	\$ (49,195)	\$ (34,026)
Net cash used in investing activities	(6,123)	(15,577)	(81,796)
Net cash provided by financing activities	8,375	91,452	109,558
Effect of foreign currency exchange rates on cash and cash equivalents	1,087	366	(890)
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	\$ 12,275	\$ 27,046	\$ (7,154)

Cash Flows from Operating Activities

Cash provided by operating activities aggregated \$8.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 . The significant improvement compared to prior years was primarily attributable to significantly lower operating expenses as the result of our cost efficiency program, and significantly lower inventory purchases due to improved inventory management.

Cash Flows from Investing Activities

For the year ended December 31, 2017 , the net cash flow used in investing activities reflected \$7.9 million used for the purchase of property and equipment, and \$1.8 million released from the cash collateral for our letters of credit. Our purchases of property and equipment largely consist of computer hardware and software to support R&D activities, and leasehold improvements.

Cash Flows from Financing Activities

For the year ended December 31, 2017 , the net cash flow provided by financing activities reflected the additional \$15.0 million term loan and \$0.7 million issuance costs paid for the Second Amendment to the Financing Agreement entered into in November 2017. All outstanding loans under the Financing Agreement will become due and payable in February 2021, or in May 2020 if the \$123 million in outstanding principal of the Notes has not been repaid or refinanced by such time.

CONTRACTUAL AND COMMERCIAL OBLIGATIONS

The following table outlines our contractual payment obligations as of December 31, 2017 (in thousands):

	Total	Less than 1 Year	1 – 3 Years	3 – 5 Years	After 5 Years
Notes	\$ 123,000	\$ —	\$ 123,000	\$ —	\$ —
Term Loan	106,250	5,750	100,500	—	—
Operating leases	40,285	13,942	18,576	5,208	2,559
Unconditional purchase obligations (a)	24,415	24,415	—	—	—
	<u>\$ 293,950</u>	<u>\$ 44,107</u>	<u>\$ 242,076</u>	<u>\$ 5,208</u>	<u>\$ 2,559</u>

(a) At December 31, 2017, we had entered into purchase commitments for certain inventory and other goods used in our normal operations. The purchase commitments covered by these agreements are for a period of less than one year.

Other contractual arrangements or unrecognized tax positions that may result in cash payments consisted of the following at December 31, 2017 (in thousands):

	Total	Less than 1 Year	1 – 3 Years	3 – 5 Years	After 5 Years
Unrecognized tax positions and related interest	\$ 1,500	\$ 1,500	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —
Stand-by letters of credit	3,492	944	2,093	167	288
	<u>\$ 4,992</u>	<u>\$ 2,444</u>	<u>\$ 2,093</u>	<u>\$ 167</u>	<u>\$ 288</u>

The Term Loan will become due and payable on the earlier of February 26, 2021 and the date that is 30 days prior to June 15, 2020 if the outstanding principal of the Notes has not been repaid or refinanced by such time. The Notes mature in June 2020 and are convertible into cash, shares of Avid's common stock or a combination of cash and shares of common stock, at our election. See more details in Note Q, Long-Term Debt and Credit Agreement, to our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Form 10-K.

We entered into a long-term agreement to purchase a variety of information technology solutions from a third party in the second quarter of 2017, which included an unconditional commitment to purchase a minimum of \$12.8 million of products and services over the initial three-year term of the agreement.

We have letters of credit that are used as security deposits in connection with our leased Burlington, Massachusetts headquarters office space. In the event of default on the underlying leases, the landlords would, at December 31, 2017, be eligible to draw against the letters of credit to a maximum of \$1.3 million in the aggregate. The letters of credit are subject to aggregate reductions provided that we are not in default of the underlying leases and meet certain financial performance conditions. In no case will the letters of credit amounts for the Burlington leases be reduced to below \$1.2 million in the aggregate throughout the lease periods, all of which extend to May 2020.

In addition, we have letters of credit in connection with security deposits for other facility leases totaling \$1.1 million in the aggregate, as well as letters of credit totaling \$1.1 million that otherwise support our ongoing operations. These letters of credit have various terms and expire during 2018 and beyond, while some of the letters of credit may automatically renew based on the terms of the underlying agreements.

OFF-BALANCE SHEET ARRANGEMENTS

Other than operating leases, we do not engage in off-balance sheet financing arrangements or have any variable-interest entities. At December 31, 2017, we did not have any off-balance sheet arrangements as defined in Item 303(a)(4)(ii) of Regulation S-K.

RECENT ACCOUNTING PRONOUNCEMENTS

Recently Adopted Accounting Pronouncement

In January 2017, the Financial Accounting Standards Board, or FASB, issued Accounting Standards Update, or ASU, No. 2017-04, *Simplifying the Test for Goodwill Impairment*. The guidance simplifies the accounting for goodwill impairment by removing Step 2 of the goodwill impairment test, which requires a hypothetical purchase price allocation. Goodwill impairment will now be the amount by which a reporting unit's carrying value exceeds its fair value, not to exceed the carrying amount of goodwill. The revised guidance will be applied prospectively, and is effective for calendar year-end SEC filers in 2020. Early adoption is permitted for annual and interim goodwill impairment testing dates after January 1, 2017. We adopted the revised guidance during the first quarter of 2017. The adoption of ASU 2017-04 had no immediate impact on our condensed consolidated financial statements upon adoption, however, it could impact the calculation of goodwill impairments in future periods.

On December 22, 2017, the President of the United States signed into law the TCJA. The legislation significantly changes U.S. tax law by, among other things, lowering corporate income tax rates, implementing a territorial tax system and imposing a repatriation tax on deemed repatriated earnings of foreign subsidiaries. The TCJA permanently reduces the U.S. corporate income tax rate from a maximum of 35% to a flat 21% rate, effective January 1, 2018. The SEC staff issued Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 118, or SAB 118, which provides guidance for companies that have not completed their accounting for the income tax effects of the TCJA, in the period of enactment, allowing for a measurement period of up to one year after the enactment date to finalize the recording of the related tax impacts. See Note N for a discussion on the applicable portions of the TCJA to us and the provisional amounts included in the financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2017. The ultimate impact may differ from these provisional amounts, possibly materially, due to, among other things, additional analysis, changes in interpretations and assumptions we have made, additional regulatory guidance that may be issued, and actions we may take as a result of the TCJA. The accounting is expected to be complete within the one year measurement period particularly after the 2017 U.S. corporate income tax return is filed in 2018.

Recent Accounting Pronouncements to be Adopted

In May, 2014, the FASB issued ASU No. 2014-09, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)*. ASU No. 2014-09 is the final updated standard on revenue recognition. The standard supersedes the most current revenue recognition guidance, including industry-specific guidance. The new revenue recognition guidance becomes effective for us on January 1, 2018. Subsequently, the FASB has issued the following standards related to ASU No. 2014-09: ASU No. 2016-08, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606): Principal versus Agent Considerations*; ASU No. 2016-10, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606): Identifying Performance Obligations and Licensing*; and ASU No. 2016-12, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606): Narrow-Scope Improvements and Practical Expedients*. We must adopt ASU No. 2016-08, ASU No. 2016-10 and ASU No. 2016-12 with ASU No. 2014-09 (collectively, the "new revenue standards").

Entities have the option of using either a full retrospective or a modified approach to adopt the new revenue standards. We will elect the modified transition method and expect the impact of the adoption will be material. We are in the final stages of completing implementation activities necessary to adopt Topic 606, including finalizing the deployment of a new revenue recognition system and the evaluation of contracts with unfulfilled performance obligations as of December 31, 2017.

The adoption will result in a significant cumulative reduction in deferred revenue as of January 1, 2018, which management expects will result in a decrease to stockholder's deficit on January 1, 2018 of between \$95 million and \$115 million, because we will no longer require VSOE of fair value to recognize software deliverables with Implied Maintenance Release PCS upon delivery. Upon adoption of ASC 606, we will recognize a greater proportion of revenue upon delivery for our products that currently qualify as software deliverables, whereas some of our software product deliverables are currently recorded in deferred revenue and recognized over periods as long as six years (as described in detail in the "Significant Accounting Policies - Revenue Recognition" section above). Accordingly, as a greater proportion of product sales will qualify for recognition upon delivery rather than being recognized on a ratable basis over many years, our operating results may become more volatile as a result of the adoption. In addition, Topic 606 also requires more disclosures around revenue recognition to enable financial statements users to understand the nature, amount, timing and uncertainty of revenue and cash flows associated with contracts with customers. We will complete the remainder of its analysis during the first quarter of 2018.

We expect the tax effect of the adoption to be immaterial to operations as we have established a full valuation on its deferred tax assets for deferred revenue.

On February 25, 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02, *Leases (Topic 842)*. The guidance requires an entity to recognize virtually all of their leases on the balance sheet, by recording a right-of-use asset and lease liability. The new guidance becomes effective for us on January 1, 2019, and early adoption is permitted upon issuance. We are evaluating the potential impact of adopting this standard on our financial statements, as well as the timing of our adoption of the standard.

In August 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-15, *Statement of Cash Flow (Topic 230)*. The guidance reduces diversity in how certain cash receipts and cash payments are presented and classified in the Statements of Cash Flows. Certain of ASU No. 2016-15 requirements are as follows: 1) cash payments for debt prepayment or debt extinguishment costs should be classified as cash outflows for financing activities, 2) contingent consideration payments made soon after a business combination should be classified as cash outflows for investing activities and cash payment made thereafter should be classified as cash outflows for financing up to the amount of the contingent consideration liability recognized at the acquisition date with any excess classified as operating activities, 3) cash proceeds from the settlement of insurance claims should be classified on the basis of the nature of the loss, 4) cash proceeds from the settlement of Corporate-Owned Life Insurance, or COLI. Policies should be classified as cash inflows from investing activities and cash payments for premiums on COLI policies may be classified as cash outflows for investing activities, operating activities, or a combination of investing and operating activities, and 5) cash paid to a tax authority by an employer when withholding shares from an employee's award for tax-withholding purposes should be classified as cash outflows for financing activities. The new guidance becomes effective for us on January 1, 2018. We do not expect this ASU to have a material impact on our financial statements.

In October 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-16, *Income Taxes (Topic 740)*. The guidance requires companies to recognize the income tax effects of intercompany sales and transfers of assets, other than inventory, in the income statement as income tax expense (or benefit) in the period in which the transfer occurs. The new guidance becomes effective on January 1, 2018. We do not expect this ASU to have a material impact on our financial statements.

In November 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-18, *Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230): Restricted Cash*. The guidance requires companies to show the changes in the total of cash, cash equivalents, restricted cash and restricted cash equivalents in the statement of cash flows. As a result, companies will no longer present transfers between cash and cash equivalents and restricted cash and restricted cash equivalents in the statement of cash flows. When cash, cash equivalents, restricted cash and restricted cash equivalents are presented in more than one line item on the balance sheet, a reconciliation of the totals in the statement of cash flows to the related captions in the balance sheet is required. The new guidance becomes effective for us on January 1, 2018. We do not expect this ASU to have a material impact on our financial statements.

ITEM 7A. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURE ABOUT MARKET RISK

Foreign Currency Exchange Risk

We have significant international operations and derive more than half of our revenues from customers outside the United States. This business is, for the most part, transacted through international subsidiaries and generally in the currency of the end-user customers. Therefore, we are exposed to the changes in foreign currency exchange rates that could adversely affect our revenues, net income and cash flow.

For the year ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, we recorded net losses (gains) of \$5.1 million, \$(0.6) million, and \$(1.3) million, respectively, that resulted from foreign currency denominated transactions and the revaluation of foreign currency denominated assets and liabilities.

A hypothetical change of 10% in appreciation or depreciation of foreign currency exchange rates from the quoted foreign currency exchange rates as of December 31, 2017, would not have a significant impact on our financial position, results of operations or cash flows.

Interest Rate Risk

We borrowed \$100.0 million under the Term Loan on February 26, 2016, and borrowed an additional \$15.0 million under the Term Loan on November 9, 2017. On March 14, 2017 (the “Amendment No. 1 Effective Date”), we entered into an amendment (the “First Amendment”) to the Financing Agreement, with the lenders party thereto. Following the Amendment No.1 Effective Date, interest accrues on outstanding borrowings under the credit facility and the term loan (each as defined in the Financing Agreement) at a rate of either the LIBOR Rate (as defined in the Financing Agreement) plus 7.25% or a Reference Rate (as defined in the Financing Agreement) plus 6.25%, at our option. We also maintain a revolving Credit Facility that allows us to borrow up to \$10.0 million . A hypothetical 10% increase or decrease in interest rates paid on outstanding borrowings under the Financing Agreement would not have a material impact on our financial position, results of operations or cash flows.

We issued \$125.0 million aggregate principal amount of our Notes pursuant to the terms of an indenture on June 15, 2015, and settled \$2.0 million of our Notes on December 15, 2017. The Notes pay interest semi-annually on June 15 and December 15 of each year, beginning on December 15, 2015, at an annual rate of 2.00% and mature on June 15, 2020 unless earlier converted or repurchased in accordance with their terms prior to such date. The fair value of the Notes is dependent on the price and volatility of our common stock as well as movements in interest rates. The fair value of our common stock and interest rate changes affect the fair value of the Notes, but do not impact our financial position, results of operations or cash flows due to the fixed nature of the debt obligations.

ITEM 8. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY FINANCIAL INFORMATION

AVID TECHNOLOGY, INC.

**INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULE**

	<u>Page</u>
CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS INCLUDED IN ITEM 8:	
Reports of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firms	58
Consolidated Statements of Operations for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015	60
Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive (Loss) Income for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015	61
Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2017 and 2016	62
Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Deficit for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015	63
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015	64
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements	65

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

Shareholders and Board of Directors
Avid Technology, Inc.
Burlington, Massachusetts

Opinion on the Consolidated Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Avid Technology, Inc. (the “Company”) and subsidiaries as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive (loss) income, stockholders’ deficit, and cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2017, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the “consolidated financial statements”). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company and subsidiaries at December 31, 2017 and 2016, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2017, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (“PCAOB”), the Company’s internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017, based on criteria established in *Internal Control - Integrated Framework (2013)* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (“COSO”) and our report dated March 15, 2018 expressed an unqualified opinion thereon.

Basis for Opinion

These consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the Company’s management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company’s consolidated financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud.

Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ **BDO USA, LLP**

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2016.

Boston, Massachusetts
March 15, 2018

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the Board of Directors and Stockholders of
Avid Technology, Inc.
Burlington, Massachusetts

We have audited the accompanying consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive loss, stockholders' deficit, and cash flows of Avid Technology, Inc. and subsidiaries (the "Company") for the year ended December 31, 2015. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, such consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the results of operations and cash flows of the Company for the year ended December 31, 2015, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

/s/ **Deloitte & Touche LLP**

Boston, Massachusetts
March 15, 2016

AVID TECHNOLOGY, INC.
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS
(in thousands, except per share data)

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Net revenues:			
Products	\$ 209,461	\$ 283,110	\$ 336,371
Services	209,542	228,820	169,224
Total net revenues	419,003	511,930	505,595
Cost of revenues:			
Products	112,606	111,579	131,881
Services	56,481	59,828	61,501
Amortization of intangible assets	7,800	7,800	4,063
Total cost of revenues	176,887	179,207	197,445
Gross profit	242,116	332,723	308,150
Operating expenses:			
Research and development	68,212	81,564	95,898
Marketing and selling	106,257	110,338	122,511
General and administrative	53,892	61,471	74,109
Amortization of intangible assets	1,450	2,498	2,354
Restructuring costs, net	7,059	12,837	6,305
Total operating expenses	236,870	268,708	301,177
Operating income	5,246	64,015	6,973
Interest income	535	—	113
Interest expense	(19,964)	(18,903)	(6,346)
Other income (expense), net	761	232	(175)
(Loss) income before income taxes	(13,422)	45,344	565
Provision for (benefit from) income taxes	133	(2,875)	(1,915)
Net (loss) income	\$ (13,555)	\$ 48,219	\$ 2,480
Net (loss) income per common share – basic and diluted	\$ (0.33)	\$ 1.20	\$ 0.06
Weighted-average common shares outstanding – basic	41,020	40,021	39,423
Weighted-average common shares outstanding – diluted	41,020	40,176	40,380

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the consolidated financial statements.

AVID TECHNOLOGY, INC.
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE (LOSS) INCOME
(in thousands)

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Net (loss) income	\$ (13,555)	\$ 48,219	\$ 2,480
Other comprehensive income (loss):			
Foreign currency translation adjustments	7,470	(1,717)	(6,566)
Comprehensive (loss) income	\$ (6,085)	\$ 46,502	\$ (4,086)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the consolidated financial statements.

AVID TECHNOLOGY, INC.
CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS
(in thousands, except per share data)

	December 31,	
	2017	2016
<u>ASSETS</u>		
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 57,223	\$ 44,948
Accounts receivable, net of allowances of \$11,142 and \$8,618 at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively	40,134	43,520
Inventories	38,421	50,701
Prepaid expenses	8,208	6,031
Other current assets	10,341	5,805
Total current assets	154,327	151,005
Property and equipment, net	21,903	30,146
Intangible assets, net	13,682	22,932
Goodwill	32,643	32,643
Long-term deferred tax assets, net	1,318	1,245
Other long-term assets	10,811	11,610
Total assets	\$ 234,684	\$ 249,581
<u>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT</u>		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	\$ 30,160	\$ 26,435
Accrued compensation and benefits	25,466	25,387
Accrued expenses and other current liabilities	31,549	34,088
Income taxes payable	1,815	1,012
Short-term debt	5,906	5,000
Deferred revenues	121,184	146,014
Total current liabilities	216,080	237,936
Long-term debt	204,498	188,795
Long-term deferred tax liabilities, net	—	913
Long-term deferred revenues	73,429	79,670
Other long-term liabilities	9,247	12,178
Total liabilities	503,254	519,492
Commitments and contingencies (Note K)		
Stockholders' deficit:		
Preferred stock, \$0.01 par value, 1,000 shares authorized; no shares issued or outstanding	—	—
Common stock, \$0.01 par value, 100,000 shares authorized; 42,339 shares issued, and 41,356 shares and 40,727 shares outstanding at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively	423	423
Additional paid-in capital	1,035,808	1,043,063
Accumulated deficit	(1,284,703)	(1,271,148)
Treasury stock at cost, net of reissuances, 983 shares and 1,612 shares at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively	(17,672)	(32,353)
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(2,426)	(9,896)
Total stockholders' deficit	(268,570)	(269,911)
Total liabilities and stockholders' deficit	\$ 234,684	\$ 249,581

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the consolidated financial statements.

AVID TECHNOLOGY, INC.
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT
(in thousands)

	Shares of Common Stock		Common Stock	Additional Paid-in Capital	Accumulated Deficit	Treasury Stock	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)	Total Stockholders' Deficit
	Issued	In Treasury						
Balances at January 1, 2015	42,339	(3,045)	423	1,049,969	(1,321,798)	(68,051)	(1,613)	(341,070)
Stock issued pursuant to employee stock plans		823		(14,215)		17,691		3,476
Stock-based compensation				9,514				9,514
Convertible senior notes conversion feature (net of taxes of \$6,493 and net of issuance cost of \$1,088)				20,718				20,718
Purchase of capped call transaction				(10,125)				(10,125)
Repurchase of common stock		(587)		(23)		(7,976)		(7,999)
Net income					2,480			2,480
Other comprehensive loss							(6,566)	(6,566)
Balances at December 31, 2015	42,339	(2,809)	423	1,055,838	(1,319,318)	(58,336)	(8,179)	(329,572)
Cumulative-effect adjustment due to adoption of ASU No. 2016-09				49	(49)			—
Stock issued pursuant to employee stock plans		1,197		(20,740)		25,983		5,243
Stock-based compensation				7,916				7,916
Net income					48,219			48,219
Other comprehensive loss							(1,717)	(1,717)
Balances at December 31, 2016	42,339	(1,612)	423	1,043,063	(1,271,148)	(32,353)	(9,896)	(269,911)
Stock issued pursuant to employee stock plans		629		(15,565)		14,681		(884)
Stock-based compensation				8,311				8,311
Net loss					(13,555)			(13,555)
Other comprehensive income							7,470	7,470
Partial retirement of convertible senior notes conversion feature				(5)				(5)
Partial unwind capped call cash receipt				4				4
Balances at December 31, 2017	42,339	(983)	423	1,035,808	(1,284,703)	(17,672)	(2,426)	(268,570)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the consolidated financial statements.

AVID TECHNOLOGY, INC.
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS
(in thousands)

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Cash flows from operating activities:			
Net (loss) income	\$ (13,555)	\$ 48,219	\$ 2,480
Adjustments to reconcile net (loss) income to net cash provided by (used in) operating activities:			
Depreciation and amortization	22,337	25,479	20,088
(Recovery) provision for doubtful accounts	(340)	886	(23)
Stock-based compensation expense	8,311	7,916	9,514
Non-cash provision for restructuring	3,191	1,137	—
Non-cash interest expense	8,951	9,620	2,890
Unrealized foreign currency transaction losses (gains)	7,336	(2,599)	(7,013)
Benefit from deferred taxes	(873)	(1,842)	(6,693)
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:			
Accounts receivable	3,800	14,321	2,442
Inventories	12,280	(2,628)	3,056
Prepaid expenses and other assets	(7,567)	(1,839)	10,000
Accounts payable	3,606	(18,959)	11,232
Accrued expenses, compensation and benefits and other liabilities	(8,189)	(6,280)	(11,842)
Income taxes payable	800	(9)	(1,041)
Deferred revenues	(31,152)	(122,617)	(69,116)
Net cash provided by (used in) operating activities	8,936	(49,195)	(34,026)
Cash flows from investing activities:			
Purchases of property and equipment	(7,877)	(11,003)	(15,330)
Increase in other long-term assets	(36)	(30)	(43)
Payments for business acquisitions, net of cash acquired	—	—	(65,967)
Decrease (increase) in restricted cash	1,790	(4,544)	(456)
Net cash used in investing activities	(6,123)	(15,577)	(81,796)
Cash flows from financing activities:			
Proceeds from long-term debt	16,694	100,000	120,401
Repayment of debt	(6,735)	(3,750)	—
Payments for repurchase of common stock	—	—	(7,999)
Cash paid for capped call transaction	—	—	(10,125)
Proceeds from the issuance of common stock under employee stock plans	445	6,184	5,035
Common stock repurchases for tax withholdings for net settlement of equity awards	(1,329)	(941)	(1,559)
Proceeds from revolving credit facilities	—	25,000	70,500
Payments on revolving credit facilities	—	(30,000)	(65,500)
Payments for credit facility issuance costs	(700)	(5,041)	(1,195)
Net cash provided by financing activities	8,375	91,452	109,558
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	1,087	366	(890)
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	12,275	27,046	(7,154)
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of year	44,948	17,902	25,056
Cash and cash equivalents at end of year	\$ 57,223	\$ 44,948	\$ 17,902
Supplemental information:			
Cash (refunded) paid for income taxes, net	\$ (100)	\$ 1,587	\$ 2,251
Cash paid for interest	10,966	9,302	3,456
Non-cash transaction – property and equipment included in accounts payable or accruals	30	119	500
Non-cash transaction – unpaid issuance costs for long-term debt	—	—	130

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the consolidated financial statements.

AVID TECHNOLOGY, INC.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

A. BUSINESS

Description of Business

Avid Technology, Inc. (“Avid” or the “Company”) develops, markets, sells, and supports software, hardware and integrated solutions for video and audio content creation, management and distribution. The Company does this by providing an open and efficient platform for digital media, along with a comprehensive set of tools and workflow solutions. Digital media are video, audio or graphic elements in which the image, sound or picture is recorded and stored as digital values, as opposed to analog or tape-based signals. The Company’s products and solutions are used in production and post-production facilities; film studios; network, affiliate, independent and cable television stations; recording studios; live-sound performance venues; advertising agencies; government and educational institutions; corporate communication departments; and by independent video and audio creative professionals, as well as aspiring professionals. Projects produced using Avid’s products and solutions include feature films, television programming, live events, news broadcasts, sports productions, commercials, music, video and other digital media content.

Subsequent Events

The Company evaluated subsequent events through the date of issuance of these financial statements and, other than the event disclosed in Note Q, no other subsequent events required recognition or disclosure in these financial statements.

B. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

Principles of Consolidation

The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company and its wholly owned subsidiaries. Intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated.

Basis of Presentation

The Company’s preparation of financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosures of contingent assets and liabilities at the dates of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reported periods. Actual results could differ from the Company’s estimates.

Revenue Recognition

General

The Company commences revenue recognition when persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, delivery has occurred, the sales price is fixed or determinable and collection is reasonably assured. Generally, the products the Company sells do not require significant production, modification or customization. Installation of the Company’s products is generally routine, consists of implementation and configuration and does not have to be performed by the Company.

At the time of a sales transaction, the Company makes an assessment of the collectability of the amount due from the customer. Revenues are recognized only if it is reasonably assured that collection will occur. When making this assessment, the Company considers customer credit-worthiness and historical payment experience. If it is determined from the outset of the arrangement that collection is not reasonably assured, revenues are recognized on a cash basis, provided that all other revenue recognition criteria are satisfied. At the outset of the arrangement, the Company also assesses whether the fee associated with the order is fixed or determinable and free of contingencies or significant uncertainties. When assessing whether the fee is fixed or determinable, the Company considers the payment terms of the transaction, the Company’s collection experience in similar transactions, and the Company’s involvement, if any, in third-party financing transactions, among other factors. If the fee is not

fixed or determinable, revenues are recognized only as payments become due from the customer, provided that all other revenue recognition criteria are met. If a significant portion of the fee is due after the Company's normal payment terms, the Company evaluates whether the Company has sufficient history of successfully collecting past transactions with similar terms without offering concessions. If that collection history is sufficient, revenue recognition commences, upon delivery of the products, assuming all other revenue recognition criteria are satisfied. If the Company was to make different judgments or assumptions about any of these matters, it could cause a material increase or decrease in the amount of revenues reported in a particular period.

The Company often receives multiple purchase orders or contracts from a single customer or a group of related customers that are evaluated to determine if they are, in effect, part of a single arrangement. In situations when the Company has concluded that two or more orders with the same customer are so closely related that they are, in effect, parts of a single arrangement, the Company accounts for those orders as a single arrangement for revenue recognition purposes. In other circumstances, when the Company has concluded that two or more orders with the same customer are independent buying decisions, such as an earlier purchase of a product and a subsequent purchase of a software upgrade or maintenance contract, the Company accounts for those orders as separate arrangements for revenue recognition purposes.

For many of the Company's products, there has been an ongoing practice of Avid making available at no charge to customers minor feature and compatibility enhancements as well as bug fixes on a when-and-if-available basis (collectively "Software Updates"), for a period of time after initial sales to end users. The implicit obligation to make such Software Updates available to customers over a period of time represents implied post-contract customer support, which is deemed to be a deliverable in each arrangement and is accounted for as a separate element ("Implied Maintenance Release PCS").

Over the course of the last few years, in connection with a strategic initiative to increase support and other recurring revenue streams, the Company has taken a number of steps to eliminate the longstanding practice of providing Implied Maintenance Release PCS for many of its products, including the Media Composer, Pro Tools and Sibelius product lines. In the third quarter and fourth quarter of 2015, respectively, the Company concluded that Implied Maintenance Release PCS for its Media Composer and Sibelius product lines had ceased. In the first quarter of 2016, in connection with the release of Cloud Collaboration in Pro Tools version 12.5, which was an undelivered feature that had prevented the Company from recognizing any revenue related to new Pro Tools 12 software sales as it represented a specified upgrade right for which vendor specific objective evidence ("VSOE") of fair value was not available, the Company concluded that Implied Maintenance Release PCS for Pro Tools 12 product lines had also ended. The determination that Pro Tools 12 Implied Maintenance Release PCS had ended was based on management (i) clearly communicating a policy of no longer providing any Software Updates or other support to customers that are not covered under a paid support plan and (ii) implementing robust digital rights management tools to enforce the policy. With the new policy and technology for Pro Tools 12 in place, combined with management's intent to continue to adhere to the policy, management concluded in the first quarter of 2016 that Implied Maintenance Release PCS for Pro Tools 12 transactions no longer exists. As a result of the conclusion that Implied Maintenance Release PCS on Pro Tools 12 has ended, revenue and net income in the first quarter of 2016 increased approximately \$11.1 million, reflecting the recognition of orders received after the launch of Pro Tools 12 that would have qualified for earlier recognition using the residual method of accounting. In addition, the elimination of Implied Maintenance Release PCS also resulted in the accelerated recognition of maintenance and product revenues that were previously being recognized on a ratable basis over a much longer expected period of Implied Maintenance Release PCS rather than the contractual maintenance period. The reduction in the estimated amortization period of transactions being recognized on a ratable basis resulted in an additional \$41.8 million of revenue during the year ended December 31, 2016.

The Company enters into certain contractual arrangements that have multiple elements, one or more of which may be delivered subsequent to the delivery of other elements. These multiple-deliverable arrangements may include products, support, training, professional services and Implied Maintenance Release PCS. For these multiple-element arrangements, the Company allocates revenue to each deliverable of the arrangement based on the relative selling prices of the deliverables. In such circumstances, the Company first determines the selling price of each deliverable based on (i) VSOE of fair value if that exists; (ii) third-party evidence of selling price ("TPE"), when VSOE does not exist; or (iii) best estimate of the selling price ("BESP"), when neither VSOE nor TPE exists. Revenue is then allocated to the non-software deliverables as a group and to the software deliverables as a group using the relative selling prices of each of the deliverables in the arrangement based on the selling price hierarchy. The Company's process for determining BESP for deliverables for which VSOE or TPE does not exist involves significant management judgment. In determining BESP, the Company considers a number of data points, including:

- the pricing established by management when setting prices for deliverables that are intended to be sold on a standalone basis;

- contractually stated prices for deliverables that are intended to be sold on a standalone basis;
- the pricing of standalone sales that may not qualify as VSOE of fair value due to limited volumes or variation in prices; and
- other pricing factors, such as the geographical region in which the products are sold and expected discounts based on the customer size and type.

In determining a BEP for Implied Maintenance Release PCS, which the Company does not sell separately, the Company considers (i) the service period for the Implied Maintenance Release PCS, (ii) the differential in value of the Implied Maintenance Release PCS deliverable compared to a full support contract, (iii) the likely list price that would have resulted from the Company's established pricing practices had the deliverable been offered separately, and (iv) the prices a customer would likely be willing to pay.

The Company estimates the service period of Implied Maintenance Release PCS based on the length of time the product version purchased by the customer is planned to be supported with Software Updates. If facts and circumstances indicate that the original service period of Implied Maintenance Release PCS for a product has changed significantly after original revenue recognition has commenced, the Company will modify the remaining estimated service period accordingly and recognize the then-remaining deferred revenue balance over the revised service period.

The Company has established VSOE of fair value for some of the Company's professional services, training and support offerings. The Company's policy for establishing VSOE of fair value consists of evaluating standalone sales to determine if a substantial portion of the transactions fall within a reasonable range. If a sufficient volume of standalone sales exist and the standalone pricing for a substantial portion of the transactions falls within a reasonable range, management concludes that VSOE of fair value exists.

In accordance with Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") No. 2009-14, the Company excludes from the scope of software revenue recognition requirements the Company's sales of tangible products that contain both software and non-software components that function together to deliver the essential functionality of the tangible products. The Company adopted ASU No. 2009-13 and ASU No. 2009-14 prospectively on January 1, 2011 for new and materially modified arrangements originating after December 31, 2010.

Prior to the Company's adoption of ASU No. 2009-14, the Company primarily recognized revenues using the revenue recognition criteria of Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") Subtopic 985-605, Software-Revenue Recognition. As a result of the Company's adoption of ASU No. 2009-14 on January 1, 2011, a majority of the Company's products are now considered non-software elements under GAAP, which excludes them from the scope of ASC Subtopic 985-605 and includes them within the scope of ASC Topic 605, Revenue Recognition. Because the Company had not been able to establish VSOE of fair value for Implied Maintenance Release PCS, as described further below, substantially all revenue arrangements prior to January 1, 2011 were recognized on a ratable basis over the service period of Implied Maintenance Release PCS. Subsequent to January 1, 2011 and the adoption of ASU No. 2009-14, the Company determines a relative selling price for all elements of the arrangement through the use of BEP, as VSOE and TPE are typically not available, resulting in revenue recognition upon delivery of arrangement consideration attributable to product revenue, provided all other criteria for revenue recognition are met, and revenue recognition of Implied Maintenance Release PCS and other service and support elements over time as services are rendered.

Revenue Recognition of Non-Software Deliverables

Revenue from products that are considered non-software deliverables is recognized upon delivery of the product to the customer. Products are considered delivered to the customer once they have been shipped and title and risk of loss has been transferred. For most of the Company's product sales, these criteria are met at the time the product is shipped. Revenue from support that is considered a non-software deliverable is initially deferred and is recognized ratably over the contractual period of the arrangement, which is generally twelve months. Professional services and training services are typically sold to customers on a time and materials basis. Revenue from professional services and training services that are considered non-software deliverables is recognized for these deliverables as services are provided to the customer. Revenue for Implied Maintenance Release PCS that is considered a non-software deliverable is recognized ratably over the service period of Implied Maintenance Release PCS, which ranges from one to eight years.

Revenue Recognition of Software Deliverables

The Company recognizes the following types of elements sold using software revenue recognition guidance: (i) software products and software upgrades, when the software sold in a customer arrangement is more than incidental to the arrangement as a whole and the product does not contain hardware that functions with the software to provide essential functionality, (ii) initial support contracts where the underlying product being supported is considered to be a software deliverable, (iii) support contract renewals, and (iv) professional services and training that relate to deliverables considered to be software deliverables. Because the Company does not have VSOE of the fair value of its software products, the Company is permitted to account for its typical customer arrangements that include multiple elements using the residual method. Under the residual method, the VSOE of fair value of the undelivered elements (which could include support, professional services or training, or any combination thereof) is deferred and the remaining portion of the total arrangement fee is recognized as revenue for the delivered elements. If evidence of the VSOE of fair value of one or more undelivered elements does not exist, revenues are deferred and recognized when delivery of those elements occurs or when VSOE of fair value can be established. VSOE of fair value is typically based on the price charged when the element is sold separately to customers. The Company is unable to use the residual method to recognize revenues for some arrangements that include products that are software deliverables under GAAP since VSOE of fair value does not exist for Implied Maintenance Release PCS elements, which are included in some of the Company's arrangements.

For software products that include Implied Maintenance Release PCS, an element for which VSOE of fair value does not exist, revenue for the entire arrangement fee, which could include combinations of product, professional services, training and support, is recognized ratably as a group over the longest service period of any deliverable in the arrangement, with recognition commencing on the date delivery has occurred for all deliverables in the arrangement (or begins to occur in the case of professional services, training and support). Standalone sales of support contracts are recognized ratably over the service period of the product being supported.

From time to time, the Company offers certain customers free upgrades or specified future products or enhancements. When a software deliverable arrangement contains an Implied Maintenance Release PCS deliverable, revenue recognition of the entire arrangement will only commence when any free upgrades or specified future products or enhancements have been delivered, assuming all other products in the arrangement have been delivered and all services, if any, have commenced.

Other Revenue Recognition Policies

In a limited number of arrangements, the professional services and training to be delivered are considered essential to the functionality of the Company's software products. If services sold in an arrangement are deemed to be essential to the functionality of the software products, the arrangement is accounted for using contract accounting. As the Company has concluded that it cannot reliably estimate its contract costs, the Company uses the completed contract method of contract accounting. The completed contract method of accounting defers all revenue and costs until the date that the products have been delivered and professional services, exclusive of post-contract customer support, have been completed. Deferred costs related to fully deferred contracts are recorded as a component of inventories in the consolidated balance sheet, and generally all other costs of sales are recognized when revenue recognition commences.

The Company records as revenues all amounts billed to customers for shipping and handling costs and records its actual shipping costs as a component of cost of revenues. Reimbursements received from customers for out-of-pocket expenses are recorded as revenues, with related costs recorded as cost of revenues. The Company presents revenues net of any taxes collected from customers and remitted to government authorities.

In the consolidated statements of operations, the Company classifies revenues as product revenues or services revenues. For multiple-element arrangements that include both product and service elements, including Implied Maintenance Release PCS, the Company evaluates available indicators of fair value and applies its judgment to reasonably classify the arrangement fee between product revenues and services revenues. The amount of multiple-element arrangement fees classified as product and service revenues based on management estimates of fair value when VSOE of fair value for all elements of an arrangement does not exist could differ from amounts classified as product and service revenues if VSOE of fair value for all elements existed.

Allowance for Sales Returns and Exchanges

The Company maintains allowances for estimated potential sales returns and exchanges from its customers. The Company records a provision for estimated returns and other allowances as a reduction of revenues in the same period that related revenues are recorded based on historical experience and specific customer analysis. Use of management estimates is required in connection with establishing and maintaining a sales allowance for expected returns and other credits. If actual returns differ from the estimates, additional allowances could be required.

The following table sets forth the activity in the allowance for sales returns and exchanges for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Allowance for sales returns and exchanges – beginning of year	\$ 7,861	\$ 8,583	\$ 9,510
Additions and adjustments to the allowance	14,494	9,325	8,468
Deductions against the allowance	(12,439)	(10,047)	(9,395)
Allowance for sales returns and exchanges – end of year	<u>\$ 9,916</u>	<u>\$ 7,861</u>	<u>\$ 8,583</u>

The allowance for sales returns and exchanges, which is recorded as a reduction to gross accounts receivable, reflects an estimate of amounts invoiced that will not be collected, as well as other allowances and credits that have been or are expected to offset the trade receivables. Since many of the Company's transactions require some or all of amounts invoiced to be recorded in deferred revenue under GAAP due to revenue recognition considerations, the Company has recorded reductions to deferred revenue of \$2.4 million, \$1.5 million and \$3.2 million as of December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively, to eliminate the estimated deferred revenue attributable to transactions already provided for by the sales, returns and exchanges allowance.

Allowances for Doubtful Accounts

The Company maintains allowances for estimated losses from bad debt resulting from the inability of its customers to make required payments for products or services. When evaluating the adequacy of the allowances, the Company analyzes accounts receivable balances, historical bad debt experience, customer concentrations, customer credit worthiness and current economic trends. To date, actual bad debts have not differed materially from management's estimates.

The following table sets forth the activity in the allowance for doubtful accounts for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Allowance for doubtful accounts – beginning of year	\$ 757	\$ 643	\$ 1,182
Bad debt (recovery) expense	(340)	886	(23)
Increase (reduction) in allowance for doubtful accounts	809	(772)	(516)
Allowance for doubtful accounts – end of year	<u>\$ 1,226</u>	<u>\$ 757</u>	<u>\$ 643</u>

Translation of Foreign Currencies

The functional currency of each of the Company's foreign subsidiaries is the local currency, except for the Irish manufacturing branch and Orad Hi-Tech Systems Ltd. ("Orad") that the Company acquired in June 2015. The functional currency for both the Irish manufacturing branch and Orad is the U.S. dollar due to the extensive interrelationship of the operations of the Irish branch, Orad and the U.S. parent, and the high volume of intercompany transactions among the two subsidiaries and the parent. The assets and liabilities of the subsidiaries whose functional currencies are other than the U.S. dollar are translated into U.S. dollars at the current exchange rate in effect at the balance sheet date. Income and expense items for these entities are translated using rates that approximate those in effect during the period. Cumulative translation adjustments are included in accumulated other comprehensive income (loss), which is reflected as a separate component of stockholders' deficit. The Company does not record

tax provisions or benefits for the net changes in the foreign currency translation adjustment as the Company intends to permanently reinvest undistributed earnings in its foreign subsidiaries.

The U.S. parent company, Irish manufacturing branch and Orad, all of whose functional currency is the U.S. dollar, carry certain monetary assets and liabilities denominated in currencies other than the U.S. dollar. These assets and liabilities typically include cash, accounts receivable and intercompany operating balances denominated in foreign currencies. These assets and liabilities are remeasured into the U.S. dollar at the current exchange rate in effect at the balance sheet date. Foreign currency transaction and remeasurement gains and losses are included within marketing and selling expenses in the results of operations.

The U.S. parent company and various other wholly owned subsidiaries have long-term intercompany loan balances denominated in foreign currencies that are remeasured into the U.S. dollar at the current exchange rate in effect at the balance sheet date. Such loan balances are not expected to be settled in the foreseeable future. Any gains and losses relating to these loans are included in the accumulated other comprehensive income (loss), which is reflected as a separate component of stockholders' deficit.

The Company has significant international operations and, therefore, the Company's revenues, earnings, cash flows and financial position are exposed to foreign currency risk from foreign-currency-denominated receivables, payables, sales and expense transactions, and net investments in foreign operations. The Company derives more than half of its revenues from customers outside the United States. The business is, for the most part, transacted through international subsidiaries and generally in the currency of the end-user customers. Therefore, the Company is exposed to the risks that changes in foreign currency could adversely affect its revenues, net income, cash flow and financial position. Foreign currency transaction and remeasurement losses and gains are included within marketing and selling expenses in the results of operations. For the year ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015 the Company recorded net losses (gains) of \$5.1 million, \$(0.6) million, and \$(1.3) million respectively, that resulted from foreign currency denominated transactions and the revaluation of foreign currency denominated assets and liabilities.

Cash, Cash Equivalents and Marketable Securities

The Company measures cash equivalents and marketable securities at fair value on a recurring basis. The cash equivalents and marketable securities consist primarily of money market investments, mutual funds and insurance contracts held in deferred compensation plans. The money market investments and mutual funds held in the Company's deferred compensation plan in the U.S. are reported at fair value within other current assets using quoted market prices with the gains and losses included as other income (expense) in the Company's statement of operations. The insurance contracts held in the deferred compensation plans for employees in Israel and Germany are reported at fair value within other long-term assets using other observable inputs. Other than the investments held in the Company's deferred compensation plans, the Company held no marketable securities at December 31, 2017 or 2016. Amortization or accretion of premium or discount is included in interest income (expense) in the results of operations.

Concentration of Credit Risk

Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to concentrations of credit risk consist of cash and cash equivalents and accounts receivable. The Company places its cash and cash equivalents with financial institutions that management believes to be of high credit quality, and, generally, there are no significant concentrations in any one issuer. Concentrations of credit risk with respect to trade receivables are limited due to the large number of customers that make up the Company's customer base and their dispersion across different regions. No individual customer accounted for 10% or more of the Company's total net revenues or net accounts receivable in the periods presented.

Inventories

Inventories are stated at the lower of cost (determined on a first-in, first-out basis) or market value. Management regularly reviews inventory quantities on hand and writes down inventory to its realizable value to reflect estimated obsolescence or lack of marketability based on assumptions about future inventory demand and market conditions. Inventory in the digital-media market, including the Company's inventory, is subject to rapid technological change or obsolescence; therefore, utilization of existing inventory may differ from the Company's estimates.

Property and Equipment

Property and equipment is recorded at cost and depreciated using the straight-line method over the estimated useful life of the asset. The Company typically depreciates its property and equipment using the following minimum and maximum useful lives:

	Depreciable Life	
	Minimum	Maximum
Computer and video equipment and software, including internal use software	2 years	5 years
Manufacturing tooling and testbeds	3 years	5 years
Office equipment	3 years	5 years
Furniture, fixtures and other	3 years	8 years

The Company capitalizes certain development costs incurred in connection with its internal use software. Costs incurred in the preliminary stages of development are expensed as incurred. Once an application has reached the development stage, internal and external costs, if direct, are capitalized until the software is substantially complete and ready for its intended use. Capitalized costs are recorded as part of property and equipment. Maintenance and training costs are expensed as incurred. Internal use software is amortized on a straight-line basis over its estimated useful life, generally three years.

Leasehold improvements are amortized over the shorter of the useful life of the improvement or the remaining term of the lease. Expenditures for maintenance and repairs are expensed as incurred. Upon retirement or other disposition of assets, the cost and related accumulated depreciation are eliminated from the accounts and the resulting gain or loss is reflected in other income (expense) in the results of operations.

Acquisition-Related Intangible Assets and Goodwill

Acquisition-related intangible assets consist of customer relationships, developed technology, trade names and non-compete agreements. These assets are determined to have either finite or indefinite lives. For finite-lived intangible assets amortization is straight-line over the estimated useful lives of such assets, which are generally two years to twelve years. Straight-line amortization is used because the Company cannot reliably determine a discernible pattern over which the economic benefits would be realized. The Company does not have any indefinite-lived intangible assets. Intangible assets are tested for impairment when events and circumstances indicate there is an impairment. The impairment test involves comparing the sum of undiscounted cash flows to the carrying value as of the measurement date. Impairment occurs when the carrying value of the assets exceeds the sum of undiscounted cash flows. Impairment is then measured as the difference between the carrying value and fair value determined using a discounted cash flow method. In estimating the fair value using a discounted cash flow method, the Company uses assumptions that include forecast revenues, gross margins, operating profit margins, growth rates and long-term discount rates, all of which require significant judgment by management. Changes to these assumptions could affect the estimated fair value of the intangible asset and could result in an impairment charge in future.

The Company adopted ASU No. 2017-04, *Simplifying the Test for Goodwill Impairment*, during the first quarter of 2017. The adoption of ASU 2017-04 had no immediate impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements. The Company concluded that it has only one reporting unit and stockholders' deficit of \$268.6 million as of December 31, 2017. According to the revised guidance, the goodwill of reporting units with zero or negative carrying values will not be impaired.

Long-Lived Assets

The Company periodically evaluates its long-lived assets for events and circumstances that indicate a potential impairment. A long-lived asset is assessed for impairment when the undiscounted expected future cash flows derived from that asset are less than its carrying value. The cash flows used for this analysis take into consideration a number of factors including past operating results, budgets and economic projections, market trends and product development cycles. The amount of any impairment would be equal to the difference between the estimated fair value of the asset, based on a discounted cash flow analysis, and its carrying value.

Advertising Expenses

All advertising costs are expensed as incurred and are classified as marketing and selling expenses. Advertising expenses were not material in the periods presented.

Research and Development Costs

Research and development costs are expensed as incurred. Development costs for software to be sold that are incurred subsequent to the establishment of technological feasibility, but prior to the general release of the product, are capitalized. Upon general release, these costs are amortized using the straight-line method over the expected life of the related products, generally 12 to 36 months. The straight-line method generally results in approximately the same amount of expense as that calculated using the ratio that current period gross product revenues bear to total anticipated gross product revenues. The Company periodically evaluates the assets, considering a number of business and economic factors, to determine if an impairment exists. No amounts have been capitalized during 2017, 2016, and 2015 as the costs incurred subsequent to the establishment of technological feasibility have not been material.

Income Taxes

The Company accounts for income taxes using an asset and liability approach that requires the recognition of deferred tax assets and liabilities for the expected future tax consequences of events that have been recognized in the Company's financial statements or tax returns. The Company records deferred tax assets and liabilities based on the net tax effects of tax credits, operating loss carryforwards and temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes compared to the amounts used for income tax purposes. Deferred tax assets are regularly reviewed for recoverability with consideration for such factors as historical losses, projected future taxable income and the expected timing of the reversals of existing temporary differences. The Company is required to record a valuation allowance when it is more likely than not that some portion or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized.

The Company accounts for uncertainty in income taxes recognized in its financial statements by applying a two-step process to determine the amount of tax benefit to be recognized. First, the tax position must be evaluated to determine the likelihood that it will be sustained upon examination by the taxing authorities, based on the technical merits of the position. If the tax position is deemed more-likely-than-not to be sustained, the tax position is then assessed to determine the amount of benefit to recognize in the financial statements. The amount of the benefit that may be recognized is the largest amount that has a greater than 50% likelihood of being realized upon ultimate settlement. The provision for income taxes includes the effects of any resulting tax reserves ("unrecognized tax benefits") that are considered appropriate, as well as the related net interest and penalties.

Accounting for Stock-Based Compensation

The Company's stock-based employee compensation plans allow the Company to grant stock awards, options, or other equity-based instruments, or a combination thereof, as part of its overall compensation strategy. For stock-based awards granted, the Company records stock-based compensation expense based on the grant date fair value over the requisite service periods for the individual awards, which generally equal the vesting periods. The vesting of stock-based award grants may be based on time, performance conditions, market conditions, or a combination of time, performance and market conditions. The Company early adopted ASU No. 2016-09 during the second quarter of 2016 and made the company-wide accounting policy election to account for forfeitures when they occur.

Product Warranties

The Company provides warranties on externally sourced and internally developed hardware. The warranty period for all of the Company's products is generally 90 days to one year, but can extend up to 5 years depending on the manufacturer's warranty or local law. For internally developed hardware and in cases where the warranty granted to customers for externally sourced hardware is greater than that provided by the manufacturer, the Company records an accrual for the related liability based on historical trends and actual material and labor costs. At the end of each quarter, the Company reevaluates its estimates to assess the adequacy of the recorded warranty liabilities and adjusts the accrued amounts accordingly.

Computation of Net Income Per Share

Net income per share is presented for both basic earnings per share (“Basic EPS”) and diluted earnings per share (“Diluted EPS”). Basic EPS is based on the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding during the period, excluding non-vested restricted stock held by employees. Diluted EPS is based on the weighted-average number of common and potential common shares outstanding during the period. Potential common shares result from the assumed exercise of outstanding stock options and non-vested restricted stock and restricted stock units, the proceeds and remaining unrecorded compensation expense of which are then assumed to have been used to repurchase outstanding common stock using the treasury stock method. For periods when the Company reports a loss, all potential common stock is considered anti-dilutive. For periods when the Company reports net income, potential common shares with combined purchase prices and unamortized compensation costs in excess of the Company’s average common stock fair value for the related period or that are contingently issuable are considered anti-dilutive. The Company issued the Notes in 2015, and the Company applied the treasury stock method in measuring the dilutive impact of those potential common shares to be issued.

Accounting for Restructuring Plans

The Company records facility-related and contract termination restructuring charges in accordance with ASC Topic 420, *Liabilities: Exit or Disposal Cost Obligations*. Based on the Company’s policies for the calculation and payment of severance benefits, the Company accounts for employee-related restructuring charges as an ongoing benefit arrangement in accordance with ASC Topic 712, *Compensation - Nonretirement Postemployment Benefits*. The Company recognizes facility-related restructuring charges upon exiting all or a portion of a leased facility and meeting cease-use and other requirements. The amount of restructuring charges is based on the fair value of the lease obligation for the abandoned space, which includes a sublease assumption that could be reasonably obtained. Restructuring charges and accruals require significant estimates and assumptions, including sub-lease income assumptions. These estimates and assumptions are monitored on at least a quarterly basis for changes in circumstances and any corresponding adjustments to the accrual are recorded in the Company’s statement of operations in the period when such changes are known.

Related Party Transactions

From time to time the Company enters into arrangements with parties which may be affiliated with the Company, executive officers and members of the Company’s Board of Directors. These transactions are primarily comprised of sales transactions in the normal course of business and are immaterial to the financial statements for all periods presented.

Recently Adopted Accounting Pronouncement

In January 2017, the Financial Accounting Standards Board, or FASB, issued Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2017-04, *Simplifying the Test for Goodwill Impairment*. The guidance simplifies the accounting for goodwill impairment by removing Step 2 of the goodwill impairment test, which requires a hypothetical purchase price allocation. Goodwill impairment will now be the amount by which a reporting unit’s carrying value exceeds its fair value, not to exceed the carrying amount of goodwill. The revised guidance will be applied prospectively, and is effective for calendar year-end SEC filers in 2020. Early adoption is permitted for annual and interim goodwill impairment testing dates after January 1, 2017. The Company adopted the revised guidance during the first quarter of 2017. The adoption of ASU 2017-04 had no immediate impact on the Company’s consolidated financial statements upon adoption, however, it could impact the calculation of goodwill impairments in future periods.

On December 22, 2017, the President of the United States signed into law the tax reform act commonly known as the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (TCJA). The legislation significantly changes U.S. tax law by, among other things, lowering corporate income tax rates, implementing a territorial tax system and imposing a repatriation tax on deemed repatriated earnings of foreign subsidiaries. The TCJA permanently reduces the U.S. corporate income tax rate from a maximum of 35% to a flat 21% rate, effective January 1, 2018. The SEC staff issued Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 118 (“SAB 118”) which provides guidance for companies that have not completed their accounting for the income tax effects of the TCJA, in the period of enactment, allowing for a measurement period of up to one year after the enactment date to finalize the recording of the related tax impacts. See Note N for a discussion on the applicable portions of the TCJA to the Company and the provisional amounts included in the financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2017. The ultimate impact may differ from these provisional amounts, possibly materially, due to, among other things, additional analysis, changes in interpretations and assumptions the Company has made, additional regulatory

guidance that may be issued, and actions the Company may take as a result of the TCJA. The accounting is expected to be complete within the one year measurement period particularly after the 2017 U.S. corporate income tax return is filed in 2018.

Recent Accounting Pronouncements to be Adopted

In May, 2014, the FASB issued ASU No. 2014-09, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)*. ASU No. 2014-09 is the final updated standard on revenue recognition. The standard supersedes the most current revenue recognition guidance, including industry-specific guidance. The new revenue recognition guidance becomes effective for the Company on January 1, 2018. Subsequently, the FASB has issued the following standards related to ASU No. 2014-09: ASU No. 2016-08, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606): Principal versus Agent Considerations*; ASU No. 2016-10, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606): Identifying Performance Obligations and Licensing*; and ASU No. 2016-12, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606): Narrow-Scope Improvements and Practical Expedients*. The Company must adopt ASU No. 2016-08, ASU No. 2016-10 and ASU No. 2016-12 with ASU No. 2014-09 (collectively, the “new revenue standards”).

Entities have the option of using either a full retrospective or a modified approach to adopt the new revenue standards. The Company will elect the modified transition method and expects the impact of the adoption will be material. The Company is in the final stages of completing implementation activities necessary to adopt Topic 606, including finalizing the deployment of a new revenue recognition system and the evaluation of contracts with unfulfilled performance obligations as of December 31, 2017.

The adoption will result in a significant cumulative reduction in deferred revenue as of January 1, 2018, which management expects will result in a decrease to stockholder’s deficit on January 1, 2018 of between \$95 million and \$115 million, because the Company will no longer require VSOE of fair value to recognize software deliverables with Implied Maintenance Release PCS upon delivery. Upon adoption of ASC 606, the Company will recognize a greater proportion of revenue upon delivery for its products that currently qualify as software deliverables, whereas some of the Company’s software product deliverables are currently recorded in deferred revenue and recognized over periods as long as six years (as described in detail in the “Significant Accounting Policies - Revenue Recognition” section above). Accordingly, as a greater proportion of product sales will qualify for recognition upon delivery rather than being recognized on a ratable basis over many years, the Company’s operating results may become more volatile as a result of the adoption. In addition, Topic 606 also requires more disclosures around revenue recognition to enable financial statements users to understand the nature, amount, timing and uncertainty of revenue and cash flows associated with contracts with customers. The Company will complete the remainder of its analysis during the first quarter of 2018.

The Company expects the tax effect of the adoption to be immaterial to operations as the Company has established a full valuation on its deferred tax assets for deferred revenue.

On February 25, 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02, *Leases (Topic 842)*. The guidance requires an entity to recognize virtually all of their leases on the balance sheet, by recording a right-of-use asset and lease liability. The new guidance becomes effective for the Company on January 1, 2019, and early adoption is permitted upon issuance. The Company is evaluating the potential impact of adopting this standard on its financial statements, as well as the timing of its adoption of the standard.

In August 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-15, *Statement of Cash Flow (Topic 230)*. The guidance reduces diversity in how certain cash receipts and cash payments are presented and classified in the Statements of Cash Flows. Certain of ASU No. 2016-15 requirements are as follows: 1) cash payments for debt prepayment or debt extinguishment costs should be classified as cash outflows for financing activities, 2) contingent consideration payments made soon after a business combination should be classified as cash outflows for investing activities and cash payment made thereafter should be classified as cash outflows for financing up to the amount of the contingent consideration liability recognized at the acquisition date with any excess classified as operating activities, 3) cash proceeds from the settlement of insurance claims should be classified on the basis of the nature of the loss, 4) cash proceeds from the settlement of Corporate-Owned Life Insurance (COLI) Policies should be classified as cash inflows from investing activities and cash payments for premiums on COLI policies may be classified as cash outflows for investing activities, operating activities, or a combination of investing and operating activities, and 5) cash paid to a tax authority by an employer when withholding shares from an employee’s award for tax-withholding purposes should be classified as cash outflows for financing activities. The new guidance becomes effective for the Company on January 1, 2018. The Company does not expect this ASU to have a material impact on its financial statements.

In October 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-16, *Income Taxes (Topic 740)*. The guidance requires companies to recognize the income tax effects of intercompany sales and transfers of assets, other than inventory, in the income statement as income tax expense (or benefit) in the period in which the transfer occurs. The new guidance becomes effective for the Company on January 1, 2018. The Company does not expect this ASU to have a material impact on its financial statements.

In November 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-18, *Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230): Restricted Cash*. The guidance requires companies to show the changes in the total of cash, cash equivalents, restricted cash and restricted cash equivalents in the statement of cash flows. As a result, companies will no longer present transfers between cash and cash equivalents and restricted cash and restricted cash equivalents in the statement of cash flows. When cash, cash equivalents, restricted cash and restricted cash equivalents are presented in more than one line item on the balance sheet, a reconciliation of the totals in the statement of cash flows to the related captions in the balance sheet is required. The new guidance becomes effective for the Company on January 1, 2018. The Company does not expect this ASU to have a material impact on its financial statements.

C. ACQUISITION

On June 23, 2015, the Company completed the acquisition of Orad Hi-Tech Systems Ltd. (“Orad”). Orad provides 3D real-time graphics, video servers and related asset management solutions. The acquisition adds applications to Avid’s Studio Suite, which the Company intends to connect to the Avid MediaCentral Platform.

In allocating the total purchase consideration of \$73.4 million for Orad based on the fair value as of June 23, 2015, the Company recorded \$32.6 million of goodwill, \$37.2 million of identifiable intangibles assets, and \$3.6 million to other net assets. Intangible assets acquired included core and completed technology, customer relationships and trade name. Proforma information is not presented as the impact to the Consolidated Financial Statements is not material.

D. NET INCOME PER SHARE

Net income per common share is presented for both basic income per share (“Basic EPS”) and diluted income per share (“Diluted EPS”). Basic EPS is based on the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding during the period. Diluted EPS is based on the weighted-average number of common shares and common shares equivalents outstanding during the period.

The potential common shares that were considered anti-dilutive securities were excluded from the diluted earnings per share calculations for the relevant periods either because the sum of the exercise price per share and the unrecognized compensation cost per share was greater than the average market price of the Company’s common stock for the relevant periods, or because they were considered contingently issuable. The contingently issuable potential common shares result from certain stock options and restricted stock units granted to the Company’s employees that vest based on performance conditions, market conditions, or a combination of performance and market conditions.

The following table sets forth (in thousands) potential common shares that were considered anti-dilutive securities at December 31, 2017 and for the year ended December 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016	December 31, 2015
Options	2,290	3,670	1,901
Non-vested restricted stock units	3,063	729	470
Anti-dilutive potential common shares	<u>5,353</u>	<u>4,399</u>	<u>2,371</u>

The Company issued the Notes on June 15, 2015. The Notes are convertible into cash, shares of the Company’s common stock or a combination of cash and shares of common stock, at the Company’s election, based on an initial conversion rate, subject to adjustment. In connection with the offering of the Notes, the Company entered into a capped call transaction with a third party (the “Capped Call”) (see Note Q, Long-Term Debt and Credit Agreement). The Company uses the treasury stock method in computing the dilutive impact of the Notes. The Notes are convertible into shares but the Company’s stock price was less than the conversion price at December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, and therefore, the Notes are excluded from diluted income per share. The Capped Call is not reflected in diluted net income per share as it will always be anti-dilutive.

E. FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS

Assets and Liabilities Measured at Fair Value on a Recurring Basis

The Company measures deferred compensation investments on a recurring basis. At December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company's deferred compensation investments were classified as either Level 1 or Level 2 in the fair value hierarchy. Assets valued using quoted market prices in active markets and classified as Level 1 are money market and mutual funds. Assets valued based on other observable inputs and classified as Level 2 are insurance contracts.

The following tables summarize the Company's deferred compensation investments measured at fair value on a recurring basis (in thousands):

	December 31, 2017	Fair Value Measurements at Reporting Date Using		
		Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)
Financial Assets:				
Deferred compensation investments	\$ 1,743	\$ 484	\$ 1,259	\$ —

	December 31, 2016	Fair Value Measurements at Reporting Date Using		
		Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)
Financial Assets:				
Deferred compensation investments	\$ 2,035	\$ 493	\$ 1,542	\$ —

Financial Instruments Not Recorded at Fair Value

The carrying amounts of the Company's other financial assets and liabilities including cash, accounts receivable, accounts payable and accrued liabilities approximate their respective fair values because of the relatively short period of time between their origination and their expected realization or settlement. At December 31, 2017, the net carrying amount of the Notes is \$106.0 million, and the fair value of the Notes is approximately \$104.9 million based on open market trading activity, which constitutes a Level 1 input in the fair value hierarchy.

F. ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE

Accounts receivable, net of allowances, consisted of the following at December 31, 2017 and 2016 (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2017	2016
Accounts receivable	\$ 51,276	\$ 52,138
Less:		
Allowance for doubtful accounts	(1,226)	(757)
Allowance for sales returns and rebates	(9,916)	(7,861)
Total	\$ 40,134	\$ 43,520

G. INVENTORIES

Inventories consisted of the following at December 31, 2017 and 2016 (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2017	2016
Raw materials	\$ 11,217	\$ 10,481
Work in process	397	291
Finished goods	26,807	39,929
Total	<u>\$ 38,421</u>	<u>\$ 50,701</u>

At December 31, 2017 and 2016, finished goods inventory included \$8.2 million and \$8.6 million, respectively, associated with products shipped to customers or deferred labor costs for arrangements where revenue recognition had not yet commenced.

H. PROPERTY AND EQUIPMENT

Property and equipment consisted of the following at December 31, 2017 and 2016 (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2017	2016
Computer and video equipment and software	\$ 127,322	\$ 120,853
Manufacturing tooling and testbeds	3,591	3,567
Office equipment	5,036	4,958
Furniture, fixtures and other	10,639	10,691
Leasehold improvements	34,779	34,780
	<u>181,367</u>	<u>174,849</u>
Less: Accumulated depreciation and amortization	159,464	144,703
Total	<u>\$ 21,903</u>	<u>\$ 30,146</u>

The Company capitalizes certain development costs incurred in connection with its internal use software. For the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company capitalized \$1.9 million of contract labor and internal labor costs related to internal use software, and recorded the capitalized costs in computer and video equipment and software. There were \$1.3 million and \$5.1 million of contract labor and internal labor costs capitalized for the years ended December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015, respectively. Internal use software is amortized on a straight line basis over its estimated useful life of three years, and the Company recorded \$2.8 million, \$3.0 million and \$1.8 million of amortization expense during 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

Depreciation and amortization expense related to property and equipment was \$13.1 million, \$15.2 million and \$13.7 million for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

I. INTANGIBLE ASSETS AND GOODWILL

Intangible Assets

Amortizing identifiable intangible assets related to the Company's acquisitions or capitalized costs of internally developed or externally purchased software that form the basis for the Company's products consisted of the following at December 31, 2017 and 2016 (in thousands):

	December 31,					
	2017			2016		
	Gross	Accumulated Amortization	Net	Gross	Accumulated Amortization	Net
Completed technologies and patents	\$ 58,609	\$ (47,072)	\$ 11,537	\$ 57,994	\$ (38,657)	\$ 19,337
Customer relationships	54,946	(52,801)	2,145	54,597	(51,002)	3,595
Trade names	1,346	(1,346)	—	1,346	(1,346)	—
Capitalized software costs	4,911	(4,911)	—	4,911	(4,911)	—
Total	\$ 119,812	\$ (106,130)	\$ 13,682	\$ 118,848	\$ (95,916)	\$ 22,932

Amortization expense related to intangible assets in the aggregate was \$9.3 million, \$10.3 million and \$6.4 million for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively. The Company expects amortization of intangible assets to be approximately \$9.3 million in 2018, \$4.3 million in 2019.

Goodwill

The acquisition of Orad resulted in goodwill of \$32.6 million in 2015. The Company concluded that it has only one reporting unit and stockholders' deficit of \$268.6 million as of December 31, 2017. According to ASU 2017-04 that the Company adopted during the first quarter of 2017, the goodwill of reporting units with zero or negative carrying values will not be impaired.

J. OTHER LONG-TERM LIABILITIES

Other long-term liabilities consisted of the following at December 31, 2017 and 2016 (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2017	2016
Deferred rent	\$ 2,970	\$ 5,458
Accrued restructuring	731	1,256
Deferred compensation	5,546	5,464
Total	\$ 9,247	\$ 12,178

K. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

Operating Lease Commitments

The Company leases its office space and certain equipment under non-cancelable operating leases. The future minimum lease commitments under these non-cancelable leases at December 31, 2017 were as follows (in thousands) :

<u>Year Ending December 31,</u>		
2018	\$	13,942
2019		11,740
2020		6,836
2021		2,927
2022		2,281
Thereafter		2,559
Total	\$	40,285

Included in the operating lease commitments above are obligations under leases for which the Company has vacated the underlying facilities as part of various restructuring plans. These leases expire at various dates through 2026 and represent an aggregate obligation of \$9.1 million . The Company has restructuring accruals of \$2.5 million at December 31, 2017 , which represents the difference between this aggregate future obligation and future sublease income under actual or estimated potential sublease agreements, on a net present value basis, as well as other facilities-related obligations. The Company received \$0.7 million , \$0.6 million and \$0.6 million of sublease income during the years ended December 31, 2017 , 2016 and 2015 , respectively.

The Company's leases for corporate office space in Burlington, Massachusetts, which expire in May 2020, contain renewal options to extend the respective terms of each lease for up to two additional five-year periods.

The accompanying consolidated results of operations reflect rent expense on a straight-line basis over the term of the leases. Total expense under operating leases was \$11.8 million , \$14.1 million and \$14.0 million for the years ended December 31, 2017 , 2016 and 2015 , respectively.

Other Commitments

The Company entered into a long-term agreement to purchase a variety of information technology solutions from a third party in the second quarter of 2017, which included an unconditional commitment to purchase a minimum of \$12.8 million of products and services over the initial three -year term of the agreement.

The Company has letters of credit that are used as security deposits in connection with the Company's leased Burlington, Massachusetts office space. In the event of default on the underlying leases, the landlords would, at December 31, 2017 , be eligible to draw against the letters of credit to a maximum of \$1.3 million in the aggregate. The letters of credit are subject to aggregate reductions provided that the Company is not in default under the underlying leases and meets certain financial performance conditions. In no case will the letters of credit amounts for the Burlington leases be reduced to below \$1.2 million in the aggregate throughout the lease periods, all of which extend to May 2020.

The Company also has letters of credit in connection with security deposits for other facility leases totaling \$1.1 million in the aggregate, as well as letters of credit totaling \$1.1 million that otherwise support its ongoing operations. These letters of credit have various terms and expire during 2018 and beyond, while some of the letters of credit may automatically renew based on the terms of the underlying agreements.

Purchase Commitments and Sole-Source Suppliers

At December 31, 2017, the Company had entered into purchase commitments for certain inventory and other goods used in its normal operations. The purchase commitments covered by these agreements are for a period of less than one year and in the aggregate total \$24.4 million.

The Company depends on sole-source suppliers for certain key hardware components of its products. Although the Company has procedures in place to mitigate the risks associated with its sole-sourced suppliers, the Company cannot be certain that it will be able to obtain sole-sourced components or finished goods from alternative suppliers or that it will be able to do so on commercially reasonable terms without a material impact on its results of operations or financial position. The Company procures product components and builds inventory based on forecasts of product life cycle and customer demand. If the Company is unable to provide accurate forecasts or manage inventory levels in response to shifts in customer demand, the Company may have insufficient, excess or obsolete product inventory.

Contingencies

The Company's industry is characterized by the existence of a large number of patents and frequent claims and litigation regarding patent and other intellectual property rights. In addition to the legal proceedings described above, the Company is involved in legal proceedings from time to time arising from the normal course of business activities, including claims of alleged infringement of intellectual property rights and contractual, commercial, employee relations, product or service performance, or other matters. The Company does not believe these matters will have a material adverse effect on the Company's financial position or results of operations. However, the outcome of legal proceedings and claims brought against the Company is subject to significant uncertainty. Therefore, the Company's financial position or results of operations may be negatively affected by the unfavorable resolution of one or more of these proceedings for the period in which a matter is resolved. The Company's results could be materially adversely affected if the Company is accused of, or found to be, infringing third parties' intellectual property rights.

In November 2016, a purported securities class action lawsuit was filed in the U.S. District Court for the District of Massachusetts (*Mohanty v. Avid Technology, Inc. et al.*, No. 16-cv-12336) against the Company and certain of its executive officers seeking unspecified damages and other relief on behalf of a purported class of purchasers of the Company's common stock between August 4, 2016 and November 9, 2016, inclusive. The complaint purported to state a claim for violation of federal securities laws as a result of alleged violations of Sections 10(b) and 20(a) of the Exchange Act and Rule 10b-5 promulgated thereunder. The complaint's allegations relate generally to the Company's disclosure surrounding the level of implementation of the Company's Avid NEXIS solution product offerings. On February 7, 2017, the Court appointed a lead plaintiff and counsel in the matter. On June 14, 2017, the Company moved to dismiss the action. On July 31, 2017, the lead plaintiff filed an opposition to the Company's motion to dismiss, and on August 21, 2017, the Company filed its reply brief. On October 13, 2017, after a mediation, the parties reached an agreement in principle to settle this litigation. The Company expects the majority of the settlement to be funded by its insurers. Finalization of the settlement is subject to a number of conditions, including execution of definitive documentation and approval by the court.

Following the termination of the Company's former Chairman and Chief Executive Officer on February 25, 2018, the Company received a notice alleging that the Company breached the former employee's employment agreement. While the Company intends to defend any claim vigorously, when and if a claim is actually filed, the Company is currently unable to estimate an amount or range of any reasonably possible losses that could occur as a result of this matter.

The Company considers all claims on a quarterly basis and based on known facts assesses whether potential losses are considered reasonably possible, probable and estimable. Based upon this assessment, the Company then evaluates disclosure requirements and whether to accrue for such claims in its consolidated financial statements.

The Company records a provision for a liability when it is both probable that a liability has been incurred and the amount of the loss can be reasonably estimated. These provisions are reviewed at least quarterly and adjusted to reflect the impacts of negotiations, settlements, rulings, advice of legal counsel and other information and events pertaining to a particular case.

At December 31, 2017 and as of the date of filing of these consolidated financial statements, the Company believes that, other than as set forth in this note, no provision for liability nor disclosure is required related to any claims because: (a) there is no

reasonable possibility that a loss exceeding amounts already recognized (if any) may be incurred with respect to such claim; (b) a reasonably possible loss or range of loss cannot be estimated; or (c) such estimate is immaterial.

Additionally, the Company provides indemnification to certain customers for losses incurred in connection with intellectual property infringement claims brought by third parties with respect to the Company's products. These indemnification provisions generally offer perpetual coverage for infringement claims based upon the products covered by the agreement and the maximum potential amount of future payments the Company could be required to make under these indemnification provisions is theoretically unlimited. To date, the Company has not incurred material costs related to these indemnification provisions; accordingly, the Company believes the estimated fair value of these indemnification provisions is immaterial. Further, certain of the Company's arrangements with customers include clauses whereby the Company may be subject to penalties for failure to meet certain performance obligations; however, the Company has not recorded any related material penalties to date.

The Company provides warranties on externally sourced and internally developed hardware. For internally developed hardware and in cases where the warranty granted to customers for externally sourced hardware is greater than that provided by the manufacturer, the Company records an accrual for the related liability based on historical trends and actual material and labor costs. The following table sets forth the activity in the product warranty accrual account for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 (in thousands):

Accrual balance at January 1, 2015	\$	2,792
Accruals for product warranties		3,025
Cost of warranty claims		(3,583)
Accrual balance at December 31, 2015		2,234
Accruals for product warranties		2,822
Cost of warranty claims		(2,538)
Accrual balance at December 31, 2016		2,518
Accruals for product warranties		2,572
Cost of warranty claims		(2,545)
Accrual balance at December 31, 2017	\$	2,545

L. CAPITAL STOCK

Preferred Stock

The Company has authorized up to one million shares of preferred stock, \$0.01 par value per share, for issuance. Each series of preferred stock shall have such rights, preferences, privileges and restrictions, including voting rights, dividend rights, conversion rights, redemption privileges and liquidation preferences, as may be determined by the Company's board of directors (the "Board").

Stock Incentive Plans

In November 2014, the Company registered an aggregate of 3,750,000 of its shares of \$0.01 par value per share common stock and in June 2017, the Company registered an additional 1,290,000 of its shares of \$0.01 par value per share common stock, which have been authorized and reserved for issuance under the Avid Technology, Inc. 2014 Stock Incentive Plan (the "Plan"). The Plan was originally adopted by the Company's Board of Directors on September 14, 2014 and approved by the Company's stockholders on October 29, 2014. In connection with the approval of the Plan the Company's Amended and Restated 2005 Stock Incentive Plan has been closed; no additional awards may be granted under that Plan. Shares available for issuance under the Company's 2014 Stock Incentive Plan totaled 691,701 at December 31, 2017.

Under the Plan, the Company may grant stock awards or options to purchase the Company's common stock to employees, officers, directors and consultants. The exercise price for options generally must be no less than market price on the date of grant. Awards may be performance-based where vesting or exercisability is conditioned on achieving performance objectives, time-based or a combination of both. Current option grants become exercisable over various periods, typically three to four years for

employees and one year for non-employee directors, and have a maximum term of seven to ten years. Restricted stock and restricted stock unit awards with time-based vesting typically vest over three to four years for employees and one year for non-employee directors.

In November 2014, the Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors modified certain market and performance based options and restricted stock units held by seven employees of the Company that were originally granted between 2009 and 2013. The modifications included (i) a conversion of vesting conditions from market and performance bases to a four year service period, including providing credit for service already rendered prior to the modification and (ii) an acceleration clause that allows vesting of between 50% and 100% of unvested awards if certain 2014 Adjusted EBITDA targets were achieved. In total, options to purchase 933,750 shares and 31,250 restricted stock units were modified, which resulted in incremental compensation expense of \$4.3 million, \$2.3 million of which was recognized upon modification, \$1.5 million of which was recognized in the quarter ended December 31, 2014 upon achieving specific 2014 Adjusted EBITDA targets and the remaining \$0.5 million was recognized in 2015.

The Company uses the Black-Scholes option pricing model to estimate the fair value of stock option grants with time-based vesting. The Black-Scholes model relies on a number of key assumptions to calculate estimated fair value. The assumed dividend yield of zero is based on the fact that the Company has never paid cash dividends and has no present expectation to pay cash dividends and the Company's current Financing Agreement precludes the Company from paying dividends. The expected volatility is now based on actual historic stock volatility for periods equivalent to the expected term of the award. The assumed risk-free interest rate is the U.S. Treasury security rate with a term equal to the expected life of the option. The assumed expected life is based on company-specific historical experience considering the exercise behavior of past grants and models the pattern of aggregate exercises.

The fair value of restricted stock and restricted stock unit awards with time-based vesting is based on the intrinsic value of the awards at the date of grant, as the awards have a purchase price of \$0.01 per share.

The Company also issues stock option grants or restricted stock unit awards with vesting based on market conditions, specifically the Company's stock price and performance conditions, generally using adjusted EBITDA. The fair values and derived service periods for all grants that include vesting based on market conditions are estimated using the Monte Carlo valuation method. For stock option grants that include vesting based on performance conditions, the fair values are estimated using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. For restricted stock unit awards that include vesting based on performance conditions, the fair values are estimated based on the intrinsic values of the awards at the date of grant, as the awards have a purchase price of \$0.01 per share.

Information with respect to options granted under all stock option plans for the year ended December 31, 2017 was as follows:

	Total Shares	Weighted-Average Exercise Price	Weighted-Average Remaining Contractual Term (years)	Aggregate Intrinsic Value (in thousands)
Options outstanding at January 1, 2017	2,847,502	\$10.43		
Granted	—	\$—		
Exercised	—	\$—		
Forfeited or canceled	(557,485)	\$13.59		
Options outstanding at December 31, 2017	<u>2,290,017</u>	\$9.65	2.31	\$—
Options vested at December 31, 2017 or expected to vest	2,290,017	\$9.65	2.31	\$—
Options exercisable at December 31, 2017	2,282,517	\$9.66	2.30	\$—

No options were granted during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 . The following table sets forth the weighted-average key assumptions and fair value results for stock options granted during the year ended December 31, 2015 .

	Year Ended December 31,
	2015
Expected dividend yield	0.00%
Risk-free interest rate	1.07%
Expected volatility	52.0%
Expected life (in years)	4.48
Weighted-average fair value of options granted (per share)	\$3.91

No stock options were exercised during 2017. The cash received from stock options exercised during the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015 was \$5.6 million and \$5.0 million , respectively.

Information with respect to non-vested restricted stock units for the year ended December 31, 2017 was as follows:

	Non-Vested Restricted Stock Units			
	Total Shares	Weighted-Average Grant-Date Fair Value	Weighted-Average Remaining Contractual Term (years)	Aggregate Intrinsic Value (in thousands)
Non-vested at January 1, 2017	2,155,781	\$6.33		
Granted	1,799,346	\$4.63		
Vested	(779,963)	\$7.26		
Forfeited	(111,916)	\$6.12		
Non-vested at December 31, 2017	3,063,248	\$5.10	0.93	\$16,480
Expected to vest	1,809,138	\$5.49	0.93	\$9,733

The weighted-average grant date fair value of restricted stock units granted during the years ended December 31, 2017 , 2016 and 2015 was \$4.63 , \$6.25 and \$10.31 , respectively. The total weighted-average fair value of restricted stock units vested during the years ended December 31, 2017 , 2016 , and 2015 was \$5.7 million , \$5.5 million , and \$4.2 million , respectively.

Employee Stock Purchase Plan

The Company's Second Amended and Restated 1996 Employee Stock Purchase Plan (the "ESPP") offers the Company's shares for purchase at a price equal to 85% of the closing price on the applicable offering period termination date. Shares issued under the ESPP are considered compensatory. Accordingly, the Company is required to measure fair value and record compensation expense for share purchase rights granted under the ESPP. In July 2015, the Board of Directors approved an amendment to the ESPP to change the subscription period from three to six months and accordingly to adjust the payroll cap to \$5,000 per plan period. A total of 117,764 shares remained available for issuance under the ESPP at December 31, 2017 .

The Company uses the Black-Scholes option pricing model to calculate the fair value of shares issued under the ESPP. The Black-Scholes model relies on a number of key assumptions to calculate estimated fair values. The following table sets forth the weighted-average key assumptions and fair value results for shares issued under the ESPP during the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 :

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Expected dividend yield	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
Risk-free interest rate	0.83%	0.40%	0.03%
Expected volatility	62.0%	69.0%	37.0%
Expected life (in years)	0.49	0.49	0.24
Weighted-average fair value of shares issued (per share)	\$0.86	\$1.20	\$2.15

The following table sets forth the quantities and average prices of shares issued under the ESPP for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 :

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Shares issued under the ESPP	96,507	129,342	98,300
Average price of shares issued	\$4.53	\$4.35	\$10.17

The Company did not realize a material tax benefit from the tax deductions for stock option exercises, vested restricted stock units and shares issued under the ESPP during the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 or 2015 .

Stock-Based Compensation Expense

Stock-based compensation was included in the following captions in the Company's consolidated statements of operations for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Cost of products revenues	\$ 53	\$ 60	\$ 199
Cost of services revenues	189	381	624
Research and development expenses	694	376	461
Marketing and selling expenses	1,944	1,958	1,785
General and administrative expenses	5,431	5,141	6,445
Total	<u>\$ 8,311</u>	<u>\$ 7,916</u>	<u>\$ 9,514</u>

At December 31, 2017, there was \$7.9 million of total unrecognized compensation cost related to non-vested stock-based compensation awards granted under the Company's stock-based compensation plans. The Company expects this amount to be amortized approximately as follows: \$4.5 million in 2018, \$2.8 million in 2019 and \$0.6 million in 2020. At December 31, 2017, the weighted-average recognition period of the unrecognized compensation cost was approximately 1.1 years.

M. EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS

Employee Benefit Plans

The Company has a Section 401(k) plan that covers substantially all U.S. employees. The 401(k) plan allows employees to make contributions up to a specified percentage of their compensation. The Company may, upon resolution by the Company's board of directors, make discretionary contributions to the plan. The Company's contributions to the 401(k) plan totaled \$1.6 million, \$1.9 million and \$2.3 million in 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

In addition, the Company has various retirement and post-employment plans covering certain international employees. Certain of the plans allow the Company to match employee contributions up to a specified percentage as defined by the plans. The Company's contributions to these plans totaled \$1.8 million, \$2.0 million and \$2.2 million in 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

Deferred Compensation Plans

The Company maintains a nonqualified deferred compensation plan (the "Deferred Plan"). The Deferred Plan covers senior management and members of the Board. In November 2013, the Board determined to indefinitely suspend the plan, and not offer participants the opportunity to participate in the Deferred Plan as of 2014. The benefits payable under the Deferred Plan represent an unfunded and unsecured contractual obligation of the Company to pay the value of the deferred compensation in the future, adjusted to reflect deemed investment performance. Payouts are generally made upon termination of employment with the Company. The assets of the Deferred Plan, as well as the corresponding obligations, were approximately \$0.5 million and \$0.5 million at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively, and were recorded in "other current assets" and "accrued compensation and benefits" at those dates.

In connection with the acquisition of a business in 2010, the Company assumed the assets and liabilities of a deferred compensation arrangement for a single individual in Germany. The arrangement represents a contractual obligation of the Company to pay a fixed euro amount for a period specified in the contract. In connection with the acquisition of Orad, the Company assumed the assets and liabilities of a deferred compensation arrangement for employees in Israel. The Company's assets and liabilities related to the arrangements consisted of assets recorded in "other long-term assets" of \$1.3 million at December 31, 2017 and \$1.5 million at December 31, 2016, representing the value of related insurance contracts and investments, and liabilities recorded as "long-term liabilities" of \$5.5 million at December 31, 2017 and \$5.4 million at December 31, 2016, representing the fair value of the estimated benefits to be paid under the arrangements.

N. INCOME TAXES

On December 22, 2017, the act to provide for reconciliation pursuant to titles II and V of the concurrent resolution on the budget for fiscal year 2018, commonly known as the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act, or TCJA, was signed into law. The TCJA changed many aspects of U.S. corporate income taxation and included reduction of the corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21%, implementation of a territorial tax system and imposition of a tax on deemed repatriated earnings of foreign subsidiaries. The SEC staff issued Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 118, or SAB 118, which provides guidance for companies that have not completed their accounting for the income tax effects of the TCJA, in the period of enactment, allowing for a measurement period of up to one year after the enactment date to finalize the recording of the related tax impacts.

At December 31, 2017, the Company had not completed its accounting for the tax effects of enactment of the Act; however, the Company made a reasonable estimate of the effects on its existing deferred tax balances and the one-time transition tax. As a result of the rate reductions from 35% to 21%, the Company recorded a reduction of \$129.4 million to its U.S. net deferred tax assets. The Company's deferred tax attributes are generally subject to a full valuation allowance in the U.S. and thus, this adjustment to the attributes did not impact the tax provision.

As part of U.S. international tax reform, the TCJA imposes a transition tax on certain accumulated foreign earnings aggregated across all non-U.S. subsidiaries, net of foreign deficits. The Company has not completed its final calculation for the transition tax but expect that the Company will be in an aggregate net foreign deficit position for U.S. tax purposes, and therefore not liable for the transition tax. Additionally, TCJA has repealed the alternative minimum tax (AMT) and made existing AMT credit carryovers refundable. Accordingly, the Company has recorded a deferred tax benefit and income tax receivable for its existing AMT credit in the amount of \$0.8 million.

The FASB also provided additional guidance to address the accounting for the effects of the provisions related to the taxation of Global Intangible Low-Taxed Income, or GILTI, noting that companies should make an accounting policy election to recognize deferred taxes for temporary basis differences expected to reverse as GILTI in future years or to include the tax expense in the year it is incurred. The Company has not completed its analysis of the effects of the GILTI provisions and will further consider the accounting policy election within the measurement period as provided for under SAB 118.

As noted above, the Company has not completed its accounting for the tax effects of the enactment of the TCJA but made a reasonable estimate of the effects in the areas discussed above. In other cases, such as GILTI discussed above, the Company has not been able to make a reasonable estimate at this time. However, in both cases, the Company will continue to assess its provision for income taxes as future guidance is issued, but does not currently anticipate significant revisions will be necessary. Any such revisions will be treated in accordance with the measurement period guidance outlined in Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 118. The ultimate impact may differ from these provisional amounts, possibly materially, due to, among other things, additional analysis, changes in interpretations and assumptions the Company has made, additional regulatory guidance that may be issued, and actions the Company may take as a result of TCJA. The accounting is expected to be complete within the one year measurement period particularly after the 2017 U.S. corporate income tax return is filed in 2018.

Income from before income taxes and the components of the income tax provision consisted of the following for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
(Loss) income from operations before income taxes:			
United States	\$ (4,811)	\$ 12,402	\$ (23,977)
Foreign	(8,611)	32,942	24,542
Total (loss) income from operations before income taxes	<u>\$ (13,422)</u>	<u>\$ 45,344</u>	<u>\$ 565</u>
Provision for (Benefit from) income taxes:			
Current tax expense (benefit):			
Federal	\$ (4)	\$ 102	\$ 115
State	59	32	3
Foreign benefit of net operating losses	(66)	(1,247)	(180)
Other foreign	1,774	(48)	3,734
Total current tax expense (benefit)	<u>1,763</u>	<u>(1,161)</u>	<u>3,672</u>
Deferred tax (benefit) expense:			
Federal benefit related to Note issuance	—	—	(6,493)
Federal	(821)	96	—
Other foreign	(809)	(1,810)	906
Total deferred tax (benefit) expense	<u>(1,630)</u>	<u>(1,714)</u>	<u>(5,587)</u>
Total provision for (benefit from) income taxes	<u>\$ 133</u>	<u>\$ (2,875)</u>	<u>\$ (1,915)</u>

Net deferred tax assets (liabilities) consisted of the following at December 31, 2017 and 2016 (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2017	2016
Deferred tax assets:		
Tax credit and net operating loss carryforwards	\$ 267,706	\$ 369,847
Allowances for bad debts	34	431
Difference in accounting for:		
Revenues	18,057	35,856
Costs and expenses	16,149	26,537
Inventories	4,501	9,118
Acquired intangible assets	1,830	6,112
Gross deferred tax assets	308,277	447,901
Valuation allowance	(298,955)	(432,631)
Deferred tax assets after valuation allowance	9,322	15,270
Deferred tax liabilities:		
Difference in accounting for:		
Costs and expenses	(3,608)	(6,457)
Acquired intangible assets	(2,189)	(3,669)
Basis difference convertible notes	(2,207)	(4,812)
Gross deferred tax liabilities	(8,004)	(14,938)
Net deferred tax assets	\$ 1,318	\$ 332
Recorded as:		
Long-term deferred tax assets, net	1,318	1,245
Long-term deferred tax liabilities, net	—	(913)
Net deferred tax assets	\$ 1,318	\$ 332

As noted above, the Company had not completed its accounting for the tax effects of enactment of the TCJA; however, the Company made a reasonable estimate of the effects on its existing deferred tax balances. As a result of the rate reductions from 35% to 21% , the Company recorded a reduction of \$129.4 million to its U.S. net deferred tax assets. The Company's deferred tax attributes are generally subject to a full valuation allowance in the U.S. and thus, the valuation allowance is also reduced by \$129.4 million - resulting in no impact to the net deferred asset after valuation allowance attributable to the rate reduction on January 1, 2015 the Company early adopted ASU No. 2015-17, *Balance Sheet Classification of Deferred Taxes* . The standard requires entities to present Deferred Tax Assets, or DTAs, and Deferred Tax liabilities, or DTLs, as non-current in the classified balance sheet. The standard simplified the previous guidance, which required entities to separately present DTAs and DTLs as current and non-current in a classified balance sheet.

Deferred tax assets and liabilities reflect the net tax effects of the tax credits and net operating loss carryforwards and the temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the amounts used for income tax purposes. The ultimate realization of the net deferred tax assets is dependent upon the generation of sufficient future taxable income in the applicable tax jurisdictions. Based on the magnitude of the deferred tax assets at December 31, 2017 and 2016 and the level of historical U.S. tax losses, management has determined that the uncertainty regarding the realization of these assets warranted a significant valuation allowance at December 31, 2017 and 2016 .

For U.S. federal and state income tax purposes at December 31, 2017 , the Company had tax credit carryforwards of \$52.3 million , which will expire between 2018 and 2037, and net operating loss carryforwards of \$786.8 million , which will expire between 2019 and 2037. In 2016, the Company early adopted ASU No. 2019-09, *Improvements to Employee Share-based Payment Accounting* . The deferred tax assets in the schedule above at December 31, 2016, include \$33.7 million related to prior year tax assets resulting from the exercise of employee stock options, which previously were recognized in additional paid-in capital only when utilized as a reduction in taxes payable. Prior to adoption of ASU No. 2016-09, this amount was excluded from the above

deferred tax asset schedule at December 31, 2015. The increase in the deferred tax asset of \$33.7 million was offset by a corresponding increase in the valuation allowance.

The federal net operating loss and tax credit amounts are subject to annual limitations under Section 382 change of ownership rules of the Internal Revenue Code. The Company completed an assessment at March 31, 2015 regarding whether there may have been a Section 382 ownership change and concluded that it is more likely than not that none of the Company's net operating loss and tax credit amounts are subject to any Section 382 limitation.

Additionally, the Company has foreign net operating loss carryforwards of \$113.9 million and capital loss carryforwards of \$1.7 million, each with an indefinite carryforward period and tax credit carryforwards of \$5.3 million that begin to expire in 2030. The Company has determined there is uncertainty regarding the realization of a portion of these assets and has recorded a valuation allowance against \$111.6 million of net operating losses, \$1.7 million of capital losses and \$5.3 million of tax credits at December 31, 2017.

The Company's assessment of the valuation allowance on the U.S. and foreign deferred tax assets could change in the future based on its levels of pre-tax income and other tax related adjustments. Removal of the valuation allowance in whole or in part would result in a non-cash reduction in income tax expense during the period of removal.

The following table sets forth a reconciliation of the Company's income tax provision (benefit) to the statutory U.S. federal tax amount for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Statutory tax	\$ (4,698)	\$ 15,870	\$ 198
Tax credits	(1,646)	(2,468)	(2,972)
Foreign operations	3,113	(12,662)	(4,055)
Change in uncertain tax positions	800	(6,710)	—
Non-deductible expenses and other	1,109	670	2,303
Federal benefit related to Note issuance	—	—	(6,493)
Tax deficiency on stock-based compensation	—	2,509	—
Change in valuation allowance	1,455	(84)	9,104
Provision for (benefit from) income taxes	<u>\$ 133</u>	<u>\$ (2,875)</u>	<u>\$ (1,915)</u>

As a result of TCJA and the current U.S. taxation of deemed repatriated earnings, the additional taxes that might be payable upon repatriation of foreign earnings are not significant. However, the Company does not have any current plans to repatriate these earnings because the underlying cash will be used to fund the ongoing operations of the foreign subsidiaries.

A tax position must be more likely than not to be sustained before being recognized in the financial statements. It also requires the accrual of interest and penalties as applicable on unrecognized tax positions. The Company disclosed unrecognized tax benefits primarily related to the foreign tax implications arising from the changes in revenue recognition that arose in periods prior to 2012. The unrecognized tax benefits did not have an impact on the effective tax rate because the Company maintains a full valuation allowance on the related loss carryforwards. At December 31, 2015, the Company's unrecognized tax benefits and related accrued interest and penalties totaled \$26.0 million, of which \$3.2 million would affect the Company's income tax provision and effective tax rate if recognized. At December 31, 2016, the Company's unrecognized tax benefits and related accrued interest and penalties totaled \$1.0 million, of which \$1.0 million would affect the Company's effective tax rate if recognized. During 2016, the Company had a change in its uncertain tax position related to a method change in a foreign jurisdiction and reversed the associated accrual in its entirety. At December 31, 2017, the Company's accrual for unrecognized tax benefits and related accrued interest and penalties related to an Israel audit issue totaled \$1.8 million, of which \$1.8 million would affect the Company's income tax provision and effective tax rate if recognized.

The following table sets forth a reconciliation of the beginning and ending amounts of unrecognized tax benefits, excluding the impact of interest and penalties, for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 (in thousands):

Unrecognized tax benefits at January 1, 2015	\$ 25,847
Increases for tax positions taken during a prior period	148
Unrecognized tax benefits at December 31, 2015	25,995
Increases for tax positions taken during a prior period	1,041
Decreases for tax positions taken during a prior period	(25,995)
Unrecognized tax benefits at December 31, 2016	1,041
Increases for tax positions taken during a prior period	800
Unrecognized tax benefits at December 31, 2017	\$ 1,841

The Company recognizes interest and penalties related to uncertain tax positions in income tax expense. Accrued interest and penalties related to uncertain tax positions at December 31, 2017 and 2016 were not material.

The tax years 2008 and forward remain open to examination by taxing authorities in the jurisdictions in which the Company operates. The most significant operating jurisdictions include: the United States, Ireland, the Netherlands, Germany, Israel, Japan, and the United Kingdom.

O. RESTRUCTURING COSTS AND ACCRUALS

2016 Restructuring Plan

In February 2016, the Company committed to a restructuring plan that encompassed a series of measures intended to allow the Company to more efficiently operate in a leaner, more directed cost structure. These included reductions in the Company's workforce, consolidation of facilities, transfers of certain business processes to lower cost regions, and reductions in other third-party services costs. The cost efficiency program was substantially complete as of June 30, 2017.

During the three and twelve months ended December 31, 2016, the Company recorded costs of \$5.0 million and \$12.8 million, respectively. The restructuring charges for the twelve months ended December 31, 2016 included \$10.0 million for the severance costs and estimate adjustments related to approximately 279 terminated employees and \$2.8 million for the closure of certain excess facility space, including \$1.1 million of leasehold improvement write-offs and \$0.8 million adjustments related to sublease assumptions associated with the Company's Mountain View, California facility.

During the three and twelve months ended December 31, 2017, the Company recorded costs of \$0.6 million and \$7.1 million, respectively. The restructuring charges for the twelve months ended December 31, 2017 included \$3.1 million for the severance costs related to approximately 102 positions eliminated during 2017 and the first quarter of 2018, recoveries of \$1.1 million as a result of revised severance estimates, and \$5.1 million for the closure of certain excess facility space, including \$3.2 million of leasehold improvement write-offs.

Restructuring Summary

The following table sets forth the activity in the restructuring accruals for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 (in thousands):

	Employee- Related	Facilities- Related & Other	Total
Accrual balance at January 1, 2015	58	2,285	2,343
New restructuring charges – operating expenses	5,766	—	5,766
Revisions of estimated liabilities	—	539	539
Accretion	—	226	226
Cash payments	(315)	(1,301)	(1,616)
Foreign exchange impact on ending balance	—	(78)	(78)
Accrual balance at December 31, 2015	5,509	1,671	7,180
New restructuring charges – operating expenses	10,491	943	11,434
Revisions of estimated liabilities	(497)	763	266
Accretion	—	287	287
Cash payments	(8,225)	(1,701)	(9,926)
Non-cash write-offs	—	1,137	1,137
Foreign exchange impact on ending balance	(260)	(7)	(267)
Accrual balance at December 31, 2016	7,018	3,093	10,111
New restructuring charges – operating expenses	3,095	1,526	4,621
Revisions of estimated liabilities	(1,087)	334	(753)
Accretion	—	325	325
Cash payments	(6,750)	(4,252)	(11,002)
Non-cash write-offs	—	3,191	3,191
Foreign exchange impact on ending balance	(65)	16	(49)
Accrual balance at December 31, 2017	<u>\$ 2,211</u>	<u>\$ 4,233</u>	<u>\$ 6,444</u>

The employee-related accruals at December 31, 2017 and 2016 represent severance costs to former employees that will be paid out within twelve months, and are, therefore, included in the caption “accrued expenses and other current liabilities” in the Company’s consolidated balance sheets.

The facilities-related and other accruals at December 31, 2017 and 2016 represent contractual lease payments, net of estimated sublease income, on space vacated as part of the Company’s restructuring actions. The leases, and payments against the amounts accrued, extend through 2026 unless the Company is able to negotiate earlier terminations. Of the total facilities-related and other accruals balance, \$0.3 million is included in the caption “accrued expenses and other current liabilities,” \$0.7 million is included in the caption “other long-term liabilities,” and \$3.2 million of fixed asset write-off relating to partial closures of facilities in Mountain View, California, Burlington, Massachusetts, and closure of facilities in Taipei, Taiwan and Boca Raton, Florida is reflected in the caption “property and equipment, net” in the Company’s consolidated balance sheet at December 31, 2017. At December 31, 2016, \$0.7 million was included in the caption “accrued expenses and other current liabilities”, \$1.3 million was included in the caption “other long-term liabilities” and \$1.1 million of fixed asset write-off relating to the partial closure of facilities in Burlington, Massachusetts was reflected in the caption “property and equipment, net” in the Company’s consolidated balance sheet.

P. PRODUCT AND GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION

The Company provides digital media content-creation, management and distribution products and solutions for film, video, audio and broadcast professionals, as well as artists and musicians, which the Company classifies as two types, video and audio. The

Company also classifies all its maintenance, professional services and training revenues as services revenues. Operating segments are defined as components of an enterprise about which separate financial information is available that is evaluated regularly by the chief operating decision makers in deciding how to allocate resources and in assessing performance. The Company's evaluation of the discrete financial information that is regularly reviewed by the chief operating decision makers determined that in 2017, 2016 and 2015 the Company had only one operating segment. Specifically, the Company does not internally measure profitability based upon video, audio, or service revenue.

The Company's video products and solutions are designed to improve the productivity of video and film editors and broadcasters by enabling them to edit video, film and sound; manage media assets; and automate workflows. Professional video creative software and hardware products include the Media Composer product line used to edit film, television programming, news broadcasts, commercials and other video content. Video products also include Avid shared storage systems and Avid Interplay asset management solutions that provide complete network, storage and database solutions to enable users to simultaneously share and manage media assets throughout a project or organization.

The Company's audio products and solutions include digital audio software and workstation solutions, control surfaces, live sound systems and notation software that provide music creation; audio recording, editing, and mixing; and live performance solutions. Audio products include Pro Tools digital audio software and workstation solutions to facilitate the audio production process, including music and sound creation, recording, editing, signal processing, integrated surround mixing and mastering, and reference video playback. Audio products also include a range of complementary control surfaces and consoles, including the System 5 and System 6 modular consoles, as well as the VENUE live-sound systems and Sibelius-branded notation software.

The Company's services revenues are primarily derived from the sale of maintenance contracts and professional service and the recognition of revenues for Implied Maintenance Release PCS. The Company provides online and telephone support and access to software upgrades for customers whose products are under warranty or covered by a maintenance contract. The Company's professional services team provides installation, integration, planning, consulting and training services.

The following is a summary of the Company's revenues by type for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Video products and solutions	\$ 114,787	\$ 155,408	\$ 201,559
Audio products and solutions	94,674	127,702	134,812
Total products and solutions	209,461	283,110	336,371
Services	209,542	228,820	169,224
Total net revenues	\$ 419,003	\$ 511,930	\$ 505,595

The following table sets forth the Company's revenues by geographic region for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Revenues:			
United States	\$ 161,155	\$ 186,658	\$ 185,109
Other Americas	27,031	38,824	37,081
Europe, Middle East and Africa	163,059	206,605	206,192
Asia-Pacific	67,758	79,843	77,213
Total net revenues	\$ 419,003	\$ 511,930	\$ 505,595

Other than the United States, no single country accounted for more than 10% of revenue for all periods presented.

The following table presents the Company's long-lived assets, excluding intangible assets, by geography at December 31, 2017 and 2016 (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2017	2016
Long-lived assets:		
United States	\$ 24,292	\$ 29,970
Other countries	8,426	11,786
Total long-lived assets	<u>\$ 32,718</u>	<u>\$ 41,756</u>

Q. LONG-TERM DEBT AND CREDIT AGREEMENT

Long-term debt consisted of the following (in thousands):

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
Term Loan, net of unamortized debt issuance costs of \$3,499 at December 31, 2017 and \$4,042 at December 31, 2016, respectively	\$ 102,751	\$ 92,208
Notes, net of unamortized original issue discount and debt issuance costs of \$17,026 at December 31, 2017 and \$23,413 at December 31, 2016, respectively	105,974	101,587
Other long-term debt	1,679	—
Total debt	210,404	193,795
Less: current portion	5,906	5,000
Total long-term debt	<u>\$ 204,498</u>	<u>\$ 188,795</u>

2.00% Convertible Senior Notes due 2020

On June 15, 2015, the Company issued \$125.0 million aggregate principal amount of its 2.00% Convertible Senior Notes due 2020 (the "Notes") in an offering conducted in accordance with Rule 144A under the Securities Act of 1933. The net proceeds from the offering were \$120.3 million after deducting the offering expenses.

The Notes pay interest semi-annually on June 15 and December 15 of each year, beginning on December 15, 2015, at an annual rate of 2.00% and mature on June 15, 2020 unless earlier converted or repurchased in accordance with their terms prior to such date. Additional interest may be payable upon the occurrence of certain events of default relating to the Company's failure to deliver certain documents or reports to the Trustee, the Company's failure to timely file any document or report required pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act or if the Notes are not freely tradable as of one year after the last date of original issuance of the Notes. The Notes are convertible into cash, shares of the Company's common stock or a combination of cash and shares of common stock, at the Company's election, based on an initial conversion rate, subject to adjustment, of 45.5840 shares per \$1,000 principal amount of Notes, which is equal to an initial conversion price of \$21.94 per share. Prior to December 15, 2019, the Notes are convertible only in the following circumstances: (1) during any calendar quarter commencing after September 30, 2015, if the last reported sale price of the Company's common stock is greater than or equal to 130% of the applicable conversion price for at least 20 trading days during a period of 30 consecutive trading days ending on the last trading day of the preceding calendar quarter; (2) during the five business day period after any five consecutive trading day period (the "Measurement Period") in which the trading price per \$1,000 principal amount of Notes for each trading day in the Measurement Period was less than 98% of the product of the last reported sale price of the Company's common stock and the conversion rate on such trading day; or (3) upon the occurrence of specified corporate transactions. On or after December 15, 2019 until the close of business on the second scheduled trading day immediately preceding the maturity date, holders may convert their Notes at any time, regardless of the foregoing circumstances. The Company may not redeem the Notes prior to their maturity, which means that the Company is not required to redeem or retire the Notes periodically.

The Notes are senior unsecured obligations. Upon the occurrence of certain specified fundamental changes, the holders may require the Company to repurchase all or a portion of the Notes for cash at 100% of the principal amount of the Notes being purchased, plus any accrued and unpaid interest.

In accounting for the Notes at issuance, the Company allocated proceeds from the Notes into debt and equity components according to the accounting standards for convertible debt instruments that may be fully or partially settled in cash upon conversion. The initial carrying amount of the debt component, which approximates its fair value, was estimated by using an interest rate for nonconvertible debt, with terms similar to the Notes. The excess of the principal amount of the Notes over the fair value of the debt component was recorded as a debt discount and a corresponding increase in additional paid-in capital. The debt discount is accreted to the carrying value of the Notes over their term as interest expense using the interest method. Upon issuance of the Notes, the Company recorded \$96.7 million as debt and \$28.3 million as additional paid-in capital in stockholders' equity. The effective interest rate used to estimate the fair value of the debt was 7.66%. For the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company recorded debt discount accretion of \$6.1 million and \$5.6 million, respectively, as interest expense in the Company's statement of operations. Total interest expense for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 was \$8.6 million and \$8.1 million, respectively, reflecting the coupon and accretion of the discount.

The Company incurred transaction costs of \$4.7 million relating to the issuance of the Notes. The Company adopted ASU No. 2015-03, *Simplifying the Presentation of Debt Issuance Costs*, which requires that debt issuance costs be classified as a reduction in the carrying value of the debt. In accounting for these costs, the Company allocated the costs of the offering between debt and equity in proportion to the fair value of the debt and equity recognized. The transaction costs allocated to the debt component of approximately \$3.6 million were recorded as a direct deduction from the face amount of the Notes and are being amortized as interest expense over the term of the Notes using the interest method. The transaction costs allocated to the equity component of approximately \$1.1 million were recorded as a decrease in additional paid-in capital.

On December 15, 2017, the Company purchased 2,000 of its 125,000 outstanding Notes and settled \$2.0 million of the Notes for \$1.7 million in cash. The Company recorded \$2.0 million extinguishment of debt, an immaterial amount of equity reacquisition, and an immaterial loss on the extinguishment of debt.

On February 8, 2018, the Company purchased an additional 2,000 of its 123,000 outstanding Notes and settled another \$2.0 million of the Notes for \$1.7 million in cash.

Capped Call Transaction

In connection with the offering of the Notes, on June 9, 2015, the Company entered into a capped call derivative transaction with a third party (the "Capped Call"). The Capped Call is expected generally to reduce the potential dilution to the common stock and/or offset any cash payments the Company may be required to make in excess of the principal amount upon conversion of the Notes in the event that the market price per share of the common stock is greater than the strike price of the Capped Call. The Capped Call has a strike price of \$21.94 and a cap price of \$26.00 and is exercisable by the Company when and if the Notes are converted. If, upon conversion of the Notes, the price of the Company's common stock is above the strike price of the Capped Call, the counterparty will deliver shares of common stock and/or cash with an aggregate value approximately equal to the difference between the price of the common stock at the conversion date (as defined, with a maximum price for purposes of this calculation equal to the cap price) and the strike price, multiplied by the number of shares of common stock related to the portion of the Capped Call being exercised. The Capped Call expires on June 15, 2020. The Company paid \$10.1 million for the Capped Call and recorded the payment as a decrease to additional paid-in capital.

In connection with the buyback of the 2,000 Notes on December 15th, 2017, the Company entered into a Partial Unwind Agreement with the third party. Per the terms of the agreement, the number of options under the original Capped Call transaction were reduced from 125,000 to 123,000. As a result, the Company received an immaterial amount of cash from the third party.

Credit Facilities

On February 26, 2016, the Company entered into a Financing Agreement with the Lenders. Pursuant to the Financing Agreement, the Lenders agreed to provide the Company with (a) a term loan in the aggregate principal amount of \$100 million (the "Term Loan") and (b) a revolving credit facility (the "Credit Facility") of up to a maximum of \$5.0 million in borrowings outstanding at

any time. All outstanding loans under the Financing Agreement will become due and payable on the earlier of February 26, 2021 and the date that is 30 days prior to June 15, 2020 if the \$123.0 million in outstanding principal of the Notes has not been repaid or refinanced by such time. The Company borrowed the full amount of the Term Loan, or \$100.0 million, as of the closing date of the Financing Agreement, and there was no amount outstanding under the Credit Facility as of December 31, 2017.

On March 14, 2017 (the "Amendment No. 1 Effective Date"), the Company entered into an amendment (the "First Amendment") to the Financing Agreement. Following the Amendment No. 1 Effective Date, interest accrues on outstanding borrowings under the credit facility and the term loan (each as defined in the Financing Agreement) at a rate of either the LIBOR Rate (as defined in the Financing Agreement) plus 7.25% or a Reference Rate (as defined in the Financing Agreement) plus 6.25%, at the option of the Company. The Company must also pay to the Lenders, on a monthly basis, an unused line fee at a rate of 0.5% per annum. The Company may prepay all or any portion of the Term Loan prior to its stated maturity, subject to the payment of certain fees based on the amount repaid. The Term Loan requires quarterly principal payments of \$1.25 million commencing in June 2016. The Term Loan also requires the Company to use 50% of excess cash, as defined in the Financing Agreement, to repay outstanding principal of the loans under the Financing Agreement. The Company recorded \$8.2 million of interest expense on the Term Loan for the year ended December 31, 2017, of which \$2.2 million related to the quarter ended December 31, 2017.

The Company granted a security interest on substantially all of its assets to secure the obligations under the Credit Facility and the Term Loan.

The Financing Agreement contains customary representations and warranties, covenants, mandatory prepayments, and events of default under which the Company's payment obligations may be accelerated. The First Amendment modified the covenant requiring the Company to maintain a Leverage Ratio (defined to mean the ratio of (a) total funded indebtedness to (b) consolidated EBITDA) such that following the Amendment No. 1 Effective Date, the Company is required to maintain a Leverage Ratio of no greater than 3.50:1.00 for the four quarters ended March 31, 2017, 4.20:1.00 for the four quarters ended June 30, 2017, 4.75:1.00 for the four quarters ended September 30, 2017, 4.80:1.00 for the four quarters ended December 31, 2017, 4.40:1.00 for each of the four quarters ending March 31, 2018 through March 31, 2019, respectively, and thereafter declining over time from 3.50:1.00 to 2.50:1.00. The Financing Agreement also restricts the Company from making capital expenditures in excess of \$20 million in any fiscal year. As of December 31, 2017, the Company was in compliance with these covenants.

The Financing Agreement contains restrictive covenants that are customary for an agreement of this kind, including, for example, covenants that restrict the Company from incurring additional indebtedness, granting liens, making investments and restricted payments, making acquisitions, paying dividends and engaging in transactions with affiliates.

On November 9, 2017 (the "Amendment No. 2 Effective Date"), the Company entered into an amendment (the "Second Amendment") to the Financing Agreement. The Second Amendment extended an additional \$15.0 million term loan to the Company, thereby increasing the aggregate principal amount of the term loan to \$115.0 million. The Second Amendment also increased the amount of available revolving credit by \$5.0 million to an aggregate amount of \$10.0 million. The additional \$15.0 million term loan must be repaid in quarterly principal payments of \$0.2 million commencing in March 2018. The Second Amendment also granted the Company the ability to use up to \$15.0 million to purchase Notes and modified the definition of consolidated EBITDA used in the Leverage Ratio calculation to adjust for expected changes in deferred revenue due to the adoption of ASC 606.

R. QUARTERLY RESULTS (UNAUDITED)

The following information has been derived from unaudited consolidated financial statements that, in the opinion of management, include all normal recurring adjustments necessary for a fair presentation of such information.

(In thousands, except per share data)	Quarter Ended							
	2017				2016			
	Dec. 31	Sept. 30	June 30	Mar. 31	Dec. 31	Sept. 30	June 30	Mar. 31
Net revenues	\$ 107,258	\$ 105,265	\$ 102,373	\$ 104,107	\$ 115,295	\$ 119,019	\$ 134,069	\$ 143,547
Cost of revenues	46,862	42,957	40,670	38,598	43,876	41,678	44,320	41,533
Amortization of intangible assets	1,950	1,950	1,950	1,950	1,950	1,950	1,950	1,950
Gross profit	58,446	60,358	59,753	63,559	69,469	75,391	87,799	100,064
Operating expenses:								
Research and development	16,308	16,025	16,991	18,888	18,773	19,953	21,433	21,405
Marketing and selling	25,776	25,652	29,018	25,811	21,311	27,231	30,177	31,619
General and administrative	10,624	15,193	13,644	14,431	13,112	13,822	16,818	17,719
Amortization of intangible assets	362	362	363	363	363	567	782	786
Restructuring costs (recoveries), net	595	(582)	6,063	983	4,959	5,314	(213)	2,777
Total operating expenses	<u>53,665</u>	<u>56,650</u>	<u>66,079</u>	<u>60,476</u>	<u>58,518</u>	<u>66,887</u>	<u>68,997</u>	<u>74,306</u>
Operating income (loss)	4,781	3,708	(6,326)	3,083	10,951	8,504	18,802	25,758
Other expense, net	(5,203)	(4,701)	(3,918)	(4,846)	(4,622)	(4,707)	(5,159)	(4,183)
(Loss) income before income taxes	(422)	(993)	(10,244)	(1,763)	6,329	3,797	13,643	21,575
Provision for (benefit from) income taxes	459	(1,065)	587	152	1,108	(5,321)	703	635
Net (loss) income	\$ (881)	\$ 72	\$ (10,831)	\$ (1,915)	\$ 5,221	\$ 9,118	\$ 12,940	\$ 20,940
Net (loss) income per share – basic and diluted	\$ (0.02)	\$ 0.00	\$ (0.26)	\$ (0.05)	\$ 0.13	\$ 0.23	\$ 0.33	\$ 0.53
Weighted-average common shares outstanding – basic	41,216	41,133	40,953	40,772	40,637	40,194	39,678	39,566
Weighted-average common shares outstanding – diluted	41,216	41,355	40,953	40,772	40,746	40,476	39,734	39,640

ITEM 9. CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE

Not applicable.

ITEM 9A. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES

Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures

Our management, with the participation and supervision of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, is responsible for our disclosure controls and procedures pursuant to Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Exchange Act. Disclosure controls and procedures are controls and other procedures that are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in our reports filed or submitted under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported, within the time periods specified under SEC rules and forms. Disclosure controls and procedures include controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in our reports filed under the Exchange Act is accumulated and communicated to our principal executive officer and our principal financial officer, as appropriate, to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure.

Our management, including the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer, carried out an evaluation of the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures as of December 31, 2017. Management recognizes that any controls and procedures, no matter how well designed and operated, can provide only reasonable assurance of achieving their objectives and management necessarily applies its judgment in evaluating the cost-benefit relationship of possible controls and procedures. Based on this evaluation, our management concluded that, as of December 31, 2017, these disclosure controls and procedures were effective at a reasonable level of assurance.

Management's Annual Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting

Our management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting, as defined in Rule 13a-15(f) under the Exchange Act. Internal control over financial reporting is a process designed by, or under the supervision of, our principal executive and principal financial officers, or persons performing similar functions, and effected by our board of directors, management, and other personnel, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("GAAP") and includes those policies and procedures that:

- (1) Pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of our assets;
- (2) Provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with GAAP, and our receipts and expenditures are being made only in accordance with authorizations of our management and directors; and
- (3) Provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of our assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of inherent limitations, no matter how well designed and operated, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements and can only provide reasonable assurance of achieving the desired control objectives. In addition, the design of internal control over financial reporting must reflect the fact that there are resource constraints and that management is required to apply its judgment in evaluating the benefits of possible controls and procedures relative to their costs.

Our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer have performed an evaluation of our internal control over financial reporting under the framework in Internal Control-Integrated Framework (2013), issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission. The objective of this assessment was to determine whether our internal control over financial reporting was effective at December 31, 2017. Based on the results of this evaluation, we have concluded that our internal control over financial reporting was effective at December 31, 2017.

Our independent registered public accounting firm, BDO USA, LLP, has audited our consolidated financial statements and has issued an attestation report on our internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017, which report is included herein.

Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting

Under applicable SEC rules (Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(c) and 15d-15(c)) management is required to evaluate any changes in internal control over financial reporting that occurred during each fiscal quarter that materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting. As a result of the previously identified material weakness in our internal controls over financial reporting, due to the ineffective controls over licensing and provisioning of software as described in Item 9A of our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, we have undertaken a number of remedial actions in 2017 to address the previously identified material weakness by enhancing the design of our controls to now require our development team to formalize and sign-off testing procedures currently in place to ensure documentation is sufficient for compliance purposes. Based on the enhanced design of these controls as well as the as the testing of the operating effectiveness of these controls completed to date, we believe that, as of December 31, 2017, the previously identified material weakness has been remediated.

Inherent Limitation on the Effectiveness of Internal Controls

The effectiveness of any system of internal control over financial reporting is subject to inherent limitations, including the exercise of judgment in designing, implementing, operating, and evaluating the controls and procedures, and the inability to eliminate misconduct completely. Accordingly, any system of internal control over financial reporting can only provide reasonable, not absolute, assurances. In addition, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate. We intend to continue to monitor and upgrade our internal controls as necessary or appropriate for our business, but cannot assure that such improvements will be sufficient to provide us with effective internal control over financial reporting.

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

Shareholders and Board of Directors
Avid Technology, Inc.
Burlington, Massachusetts

Opinion on Internal Control over Financial Reporting

We have audited Avid Technology, Inc's (the "Company's") internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017, based on criteria established in *Internal Control - Integrated Framework (2013)* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (the "COSO criteria"). In our opinion, the Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017, based on the COSO criteria .

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) ("PCAOB"), the related consolidated balance sheets of the Company and subsidiaries as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive (loss) income, stockholders' deficit, and cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2017, and the related notes and our report dated March 15, 2018 expressed an unqualified opinion thereon.

Basis for Opinion

The Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting, included in the accompanying Item 9A, Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audit. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required

to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit of internal control over financial reporting in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects. Our audit included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, and testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk. Our audit also included performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Definition and Limitations of Internal Control over Financial Reporting

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

/s/ BDO USA, LLP

Boston, Massachusetts
March 15, 2018

ITEM 9B. OTHER INFORMATION

Not Applicable.

PART III

ITEM 10. DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

We have adopted a Code of Business Conduct and Ethics applicable to all our employees, including our principal executive officer, principal financial officer and principal accounting officer. We will provide any person, without charge, with a copy of our Code of Business Conduct and Ethics upon written request to Avid, 75 Network Drive, Burlington, MA 01803, Attention: Corporate Secretary. Our Code of Business Conduct and Ethics is also available in the Investor Relations section of our website at www.avid.com. If we were to amend or waive any provision of our Code of Business Conduct and Ethics applicable to any of our principal executive officers, our principal financial officer, our principal accounting officer or any person performing similar functions, we intend to satisfy our disclosure obligations with respect to any such waiver or amendment by posting such information on our Internet website set forth above rather than by filing a Form 8-K.

The remainder of the response to this item will be contained in our Proxy Statement for our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders, or the 2018 Proxy Statement, under the captions “Directors,” “Executive Officers,” “Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance,” “Board Committees” and “Director Nomination Process,” all of which is incorporated herein by reference.

ITEM 11. EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

The response to this item will be contained in our 2018 Proxy Statement under the captions “Director Compensation,” “Executive Compensation,” “Compensation Committee Report” and “Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation” and is incorporated herein by reference.

ITEM 12. SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS

The response to this item will be contained in our 2018 Proxy Statement under the caption “Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management” and is incorporated herein by reference.

The disclosures required for securities authorized for issuance under equity compensation plans will be contained in the 2018 Proxy Statement under the caption “Equity Compensation Plan Information” and are incorporated herein by reference.

ITEM 13. CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS, AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE

The response to this item will be contained in our 2018 Proxy Statement under the captions “Board Committees” and “Related Person Transaction Policy” and is incorporated herein by reference.

ITEM 14. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTANT FEES AND SERVICES

The response to this item will be contained in our 2018 Proxy Statement under the caption “Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm Fees” and is incorporated herein by reference.

PART IV

ITEM 15. EXHIBITS AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES

(a) 1. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The following consolidated financial statements are included in Item 8:

- Reports of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firms
- Consolidated Statements of Operations for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015
- Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive (Loss) Income for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015
- Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2017 and 2016
- Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Deficit for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015
- Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015
- Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

- (a) 3. LISTING OF EXHIBITS. The list of exhibits, which are filed or furnished with this report or are incorporated herein by reference, is set forth in the Exhibit Index immediately preceding the exhibits and is incorporated herein by reference.

EXHIBIT INDEX

Exhibit No.	Description	Filed with this Form 10-K	Incorporated by Reference		
			Form or Schedule	SEC Filing Date	SEC File Number
3.1	Certificate of Amendment of the Third Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Registrant		8-K	July 27, 2005	000-21174
3.2	Third Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Registrant		10-Q	November 14, 2005	000-21174
3.3	Amended and Restated By-Laws of the Registrant, as amended		8-K	October 21, 2011	000-21174
4.1	Specimen Certificate representing the Registrant's Common Stock		S-1	March 11, 1993*	033-57796
4.2	Rights Agreement, dated as of January 6, 2014, between Registrant and Computershare Trust Company, N.A. as Rights Agent, including all exhibits thereto		8-K	January 7, 2014	000-21174
4.3	Amended Certificate of Designations, Preferences and Rights of Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock		8-K	January 7, 2014	000-21174
10.1	Network Drive at Northwest Park Office Lease dated as of November 20, 2009 between Avid Technology, Inc. and Netview 5 and 6 LLC (for premises at 65 Network Drive, Burlington, Massachusetts)		8-K	November 25, 2009	000-21174
10.2	Network Drive at Northwest Park Office Lease dated as of November 20, 2009 between Avid Technology, Inc. and Netview 1,2,3,4 & 9 LLC (for premises at 75 Network Drive, Burlington, Massachusetts)		8-K	November 25, 2009	000-21174
#10.3	1993 Director Stock Option Plan, as amended		10-K	February 29, 2008	000-21174
#10.4	Second Amended and Restated 1996 Employee Stock Purchase Plan, as amended		10-K	March 16, 2010	000-21174
#10.5	Amendment No #2 to Second Amended and Restated 1996 Employee Stock Purchase Plan, as amended		10-K	September 12, 2014	001-36254
#10.6	1997 Stock Option Plan		10-K	March 27, 1998	000-21174
#10.7	1997 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended		10-Q	May 14, 1997	000-21174
#10.8	Second Amended and Restated Non-Qualified Deferred Compensation Plan		10-K	February 29, 2008	000-21174
#10.9	1998 Stock Option Plan		10-K	March 16, 2005	000-21174
#10.10	Amended and Restated 1999 Stock Option Plan		10-K	March 16, 2005	000-21174
#10.11	Amended and Restated 2005 Stock Incentive Plan		10-Q	August 7, 2008	000-21174
#10.12	Amendment No. 1 to Amended and Restated 2005 Stock Incentive Plan		10-K	September 12, 2014	001-36254
#10.13	Form of Incentive Stock Option Agreement under the Registrant's Amended and Restated 2005 Stock Incentive Plan		10-K	September 12, 2014	001-36254
#10.14	Form of Nonstatutory Stock Option Agreement under the Registrant's Amended and Restated 2005 Stock Incentive Plan		10-K	September 12, 2014	001-36254

#10.15	Form of Nonstatutory Stock Option Agreement for Outside Directors under the Registrant's Amended and Restated 2005 Stock Incentive Plan	8-K	July 8, 2008	000-21174
#10.16	Form of Restricted Stock Unit Agreement under the Registrant's Amended and Restated 2005 Stock Incentive Plan	8-K	July 8, 2008	000-21174
#10.17	Form of Restricted Stock Unit Agreement for Outside Directors under the Registrant's Amended and Restated 2005 Stock Incentive Plan	8-K	July 8, 2008	000-21174
#10.18	Form of Stock Option Agreement for UK Employees under the HM Revenue and Customs Approved Sub-Plan for UK Employees under the Registrant's Amended and Restated 2005 Stock Incentive Plan	8-K	July 8, 2008	000-21174
#10.19	Form of Nonstatutory Stock Option Grant Terms and Conditions (under the 1997 Stock Incentive Plan)	8-K	February 21, 2007	000-21174
#10.20	Form of Incentive Stock Option Grant Terms and Conditions (under the 1997 Stock Incentive Plan)	8-K	February 21, 2007	000-21174
#10.21	2014 Stock Incentive Plan	10-K	March 16, 2015	001-36254
#10.22	Form of Restricted Stock Unit Agreement under the Registrant's Amended and Restated 2014 Stock Incentive Plan	10-K	March 16, 2015	001-36254
#10.23	Form of NSO Agreement under the Registrant's 2014 Stock Incentive Plan	10-K	March 16, 2015	001-36254
#10.24	Form of ISO/NSO Agreement under the Registrant's 2014 Stock Incentive Plan	10-K	March 16, 2015	001-36254
#10.25	Separation Agreement dated February 6, 2013 between Registrant and Gary G. Greenfield	8-K/A	February 12, 2013	000-21174
#10.26	Consulting and Separation Agreement dated April 22, 2013 between the Registrant and Kenneth A Sexton	10-Q	September 12, 2014	001-36254
#10.27	Amended and Restated Executive Employment Agreement dated December 22, 2010 between the Registrant and Christopher C. Gahagan	10-K	March 14, 2011	000-21174
#10.28	Form of Executive Officer Employment Letter as of January 1, 2012	10-K	February 29, 2012	000-21174
#10.29	Summary of 2013 Annual Executive Incentive Program	10-K	September 12, 2014	001-36254
#10.30	Executive Employment Agreement dated February 11, 2013 between the Registrant and Louis Hernandez, Jr.	8-K/A	February 12, 2013	000-21174
#10.31	Amended and Restated Executive Employment Agreement dated April 22, 2013 between the Registrant and John Frederick	10-Q	September 12, 2014	001-36254
#10.32	2013 Remediation Bonus Plan	8-K	July 25, 2013	000-21174
#10.33	Summary of 2014 Annual Executive Incentive Program	10-Q	September 23, 2014	001-36254
10.34	Agreement and Plan of Merger, dated as of April 12, 2015, by and among Orad Hi-Tech Solutions	8-K	April 13, 2015	001-36254
10.35	Form of Voting and Support Agreement between Avid Technology, Inc. and certain shareholders of Orad Hi-Tech Solutions Ltd.	8-K	April 13, 2015	001-36254

10.36	Financing Commitment Letter, dated April 12, 2015, by and between Avid Technology, Inc. and the Lenders specified therein	8-K	April 13, 2015	001-36254
#10.37	Summary of Avid Technology, Inc.'s 2015 Executive Bonus Plan	10-Q	May 8, 2015	001-36254
10.38	Indenture, dated as of June 15, 2015, between Avid Technology, Inc. and Wells Fargo Bank, National Association (including the form of 2.00% Convertible Senior Notes due 2020)	8-K/A	June 16, 2015	001-36254
10.39	Base capped call transaction confirmation, dated as of June 9, 2015, by and between Jefferies International Limited and Avid Technology, Inc., in reference to the 2.00% Convertible Senior Notes due 2020	8-K/A	June 16, 2015	001-36254
10.40	Credit Agreement among Avid Technology, Inc., the Lenders named therein and KeyBank National Association dated June 22, 2015	8-K	June 23, 2015	001-36254
#10.41	Second Amended and Restated 1996 Employee Stock Purchase Plan, as amended July 2015	10-Q	November 6, 2015	001-36254
10.42	Financing Agreement, dated February 26, 2016, among Avid Technology, Inc., the Lenders named therein	10-K	March 15, 2016	001-36254
10.43	Amendment No. 1 to Financing Agreement, dated February 26, 2016, among Avid Technology, Inc., the Lenders named therein	8-K	March 20, 2017	001-36254
10.44	Standstill Agreement, dated February 16, 2018, among Avid Technology, Inc., and Cove Street Capital, LLC	8-K	February 21, 2018	001-36254
10.45	Amendment No. 2 to Financing Agreement, dated February 26, 2016, among Avid Technology, Inc., the Lenders named therein			X
10.46	Amendment No. 3 to Financing Agreement, dated February 26, 2016, among Avid Technology, Inc., the Lender named therein			X
21	Subsidiaries of the Registrant			X
23.1	Consent of Deloitte & Touche LLP			X
23.2	Consent of BDO USA, LLP			X
31.1	Certification of Principal Executive Officer pursuant to Rules 13a-14 and 15d-14 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002			X
31.2	Certification of Principal Financial Officer pursuant to Rules 13a-14 and 15d-14 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002			X
32.1	Certifications pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002			X
**101.INS	XBRL Instance Document			X
**101.SCH	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema Document			X
**101.CAL	XBRL Taxonomy Calculation Linkbase Document			X

**101.DEF	XBRL Taxonomy Definition Linkbase Document	X
**101.LAB	XBRL Taxonomy Label Linkbase Document	X
**101.PRE	XBRL Taxonomy Presentation Linkbase Document	X

Management contract or compensatory plan identified pursuant to Item 15(a)3.

* Effective date of Form S-1.

** Pursuant to Rule 406T of Regulation S-T, XBRL (Extensible Business Reporting Language) information is deemed not filed or a part of a registration statement or prospectus for purposes of sections 11 or 12 of the Securities Act of 1933, is deemed not filed for purposes of section 18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and otherwise is not subject to liability under these sections.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

AVID TECHNOLOGY, INC.
(Registrant)

By: /s/ Jeff Rosica
Jeff Rosica
President and Chief Executive Officer
(Principal Executive Officer)

Date: March 15, 2018

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

By: /s/ Jeff Rosica
Jeff Rosica
President and Chief Executive Officer
(Principal Executive Officer)

By: /s/ Brian E. Agle
Brian E. Agle
Senior Vice President and Chief
Financial Officer
(Principal Financial Officer)

By: /s/ Ryan H. Murray
Ryan H. Murray
Vice President of Finance and Chief
Accounting Officer
(Principal Accounting Officer)

Date: March 15, 2018

Date: March 15, 2018

Date: March 15, 2018

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>NAME</u>	<u>TITLE</u>	<u>DATE</u>
<u>/s/ Nancy Hawthorne</u> Nancy Hawthorne	Chair of the Board of Directors	March 15, 2018
<u>/s/ Jeff Rosica</u> Jeff Rosica	President and Chief Executive Officer	March 15, 2018
<u>/s/ Robert M. Bakish</u> Robert M. Bakish	Director	March 15, 2018
<u>/s/ Paula E. Boggs</u> Paula E. Boggs	Director	March 15, 2018
<u>/s/ Elizabeth M. Daley</u> Elizabeth M. Daley	Director	March 15, 2018
<u>/s/ John P. Wallace</u> John P. Wallace	Director	March 15, 2018
<u>/s/ John H. Park</u> John H. Park	Director	March 15, 2018
<u>/s/ Peter Westley</u> Peter Westley	Director	March 15, 2018
<u>/s/ Daniel B. Silvers</u> Daniel B. Silvers	Director	March 15, 2018

**AMENDMENT NO. 2
TO FINANCING AGREEMENT**

AMENDMENT NO. 2 TO FINANCING AGREEMENT, dated as of November 9, 2017 (this "Amendment"), to the Financing Agreement, dated as of February 26, 2016 (as amended, restated, supplemented or otherwise modified from time to time, the "Financing Agreement"), by and among Avid Technology, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "Parent" or the "Borrower"), each subsidiary of the Parent listed as a "Guarantor" on the signature pages thereto (together with each other Person that executes a joinder agreement and becomes a "Guarantor" thereunder or otherwise guaranties all or any part of the Obligations (as defined therein), each a "Guarantor" and, collectively, the "Guarantors"), the lenders from time to time party thereto (each a "Lender" and, collectively, the "Lenders"), Cerberus Business Finance, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company ("CBF"), as collateral agent for the Lenders (in such capacity, together with its successors and assigns in such capacity, the "Collateral Agent"), and CBF, as administrative agent for the Lenders (in such capacity, together with its successors and assigns in such capacity, the "Administrative Agent" and together with the Collateral Agent, each an "Agent" and collectively, the "Agents").

WHEREAS, the Loan Parties have requested that the Agents and the Lenders amend certain terms and conditions of the Financing Agreement; and

WHEREAS, the Agents and the Lenders are willing to amend such terms and conditions of the Financing Agreement on the terms and conditions set forth herein.

NOW THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties hereto hereby agree as follows:

1. Definitions. All terms used herein that are defined in the Financing Agreement and not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Financing Agreement.

2. Amendments.

(a) Recitals. The recitals of the Financing Agreement are hereby amended by amending and restating the first sentence therein in its entirety as follows:

"The Borrower has asked the Lenders to extend credit to the Borrower consisting of (a) a term loan in the aggregate principal amount of \$115,000,000 and (b) a revolving credit facility in an aggregate principal amount not to exceed \$10,000,000 at any time outstanding."

(b) New Definitions. Section 1.01 of the Financing Agreement is hereby amended by adding the following definitions, in appropriate alphabetical order:

(i) ""Aggregate Savings Amount" has the meaning specified therefor in Section 7.01(a)(xvi)."

(ii) ""Amendment No. 2" means Amendment No. 2 to Financing Agreement, dated as of November 9, 2017, by and among the Loan Parties, the Agents and the Lenders."

(iii) ""Amendment No. 2 Effective Date" has the meaning set forth in Amendment No. 2."

(iv) ""Amendment No. 2 Fees" has the meaning set forth in the Fee Letter.

(v) ""Original Term Loan Commitment" means, with respect to each Lender, the commitment of such Lender to make the Original Term Loan to the Borrower on the Effective Date in the amount set forth in Schedule 1.01(A) hereto or in the Assignment and Acceptance pursuant to which such Lender became a Lender under this Agreement, as such commitment may be terminated or reduced from time to time in accordance with the terms of this Agreement."

(vi) ""Original Term Loan Indebtedness" has the meaning specified therefor in Section 2.01(a (iv))."

(vii) ""Original Term Loans" means the Term Loans made by the Lenders to the Borrower on the Effective Date pursuant to Section 2.01(a)(ii)."

(viii) ""Purchase Savings Amount" has the meaning specified therefor in Section 7.01(a)(xvi)."

(ix) ""Specified Note Disbursements" means the amount paid by the Borrower to purchase the principal amount of Convertible Notes purchased in accordance with Section 7.02(m)(iii)(B)."

(x) ""Term A Lender" means a Lender making a Term A Loan."

(xi) ""Term A Loan" means the Term A Loans made by the Term A Lenders to the Borrower on the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date pursuant to Section 2.01(a)(iii)."

(xii) ""Term A Loan Commitment" means, with respect to each Term A Lender, the commitment of such Lender to make the Term A Loan to the Borrower on the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date in the amount set forth in Schedule 1.01(A) hereto or in the Assignment and Acceptance pursuant to which such Lender became a Lender under this Agreement, as such commitment may be terminated or reduced from time to time in accordance with the terms of this Agreement."

(xiii) ""Total Original Term Loan Commitment" means the sum of the amounts of the Lenders' Original Term Loan Commitments, which amount was \$100,000,000 as of the Effective Date."

(xiv) ""Total Term A Loan Commitment" means the sum of the amounts of the Term A Lenders' Term A Loan Commitments, which amount is \$15,000,000 as of the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date."

(c) Existing Definitions. The following definitions in Section 1.01 of the Financing Agreement are hereby amended as follows:

(i) The definition of "Consolidated EBITDA" is hereby amended by (A) deleting the "and" at the end of clause (b) (xii), (B) retitling clause (b)(xiii) as clause (b)(xiv) and (C) inserting a new clause (b)(xiii) as follows:

"(xiii) the amount of deferred revenue recorded as of December 31, 2017 that will be eliminated in connection with the adoption of ASC 606 (Revenue From Contracts With Customers) or its successor or replacement, on January 1, 2018, which prior to the adoption of ASC 606 would have amortized into revenue, and".

(ii) The definition of "Excess Cash Flow" is hereby amended by adding the following proviso immediately prior to the end of the definition:

(iii) "; provided, that any amount paid by a Loan Party to purchase the Convertible Notes in accordance with the terms hereof shall be excluded from the deductions set forth in this clause (b)."

(iv) The definition of

"Fee Letter" is hereby amended and restated in its entirety to read as follows: ""Fee Letter" means the Amended and Restated Fee Letter, dated as of the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date, 2017, among the Borrower and the Collateral Agent (as amended, restated, supplemented or otherwise modified from time to time)."

(v) The definition of "Permitted Investment" is hereby amended by (A) deleting the "and" at the end of clause (r), (B) retitling clause (s) as clause (t) and (C) inserting a new clause (s) as follows:

"(s) Investments consisting of Convertible Notes purchased by the Borrower in accordance with the terms hereof; and".

(vi) The definition of "Pro Rata Share" is hereby amended by amending and restating clause (b) therein in its entirety to read as follows:

"(b) (i) a Lender's obligation to make the Term A Loan and the right to receive payments of the Amendment No. 2 Fees, the percentage obtained by dividing (A) such Lender's Term A Loan Commitment by (B) the Total Term A Loan Commitment (provided that if the Total Term A Loan Commitment has been reduced to zero, the numerator shall be the aggregate unpaid principal amount of such Lender's portion of the Term A Loan and the denominator shall be the aggregate unpaid principal amount of the Term A Loan) and (ii) a Lender's right to receive payments of interest, fees (other than the Amendment No. 2 Fees), and principal with respect to the Term Loan, the percentage obtained by dividing (A) such Lender's Term Loan Commitment by (B) the Total Term Loan Commitment (provided that if the Total Term Loan Commitment has been reduced to zero, the numerator shall be the aggregate unpaid principal amount of such Lender's portion of the Term Loan and the denominator shall be the aggregate unpaid principal amount of the Term Loan), and".

(vii) The definition of "Term Loans" is hereby amended and restated in its entirety to read as follows:

""Term Loans" means (i) the Original Term Loans made by the Term Loan Lenders to the Borrower on the Effective Date pursuant to Section 2.01(a)(ii) and (ii) the Term A Loans made by the Term A Lenders on the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date pursuant to Section 2.01(a)(iii)."

(viii) The definition of "Term Loan Commitment" is hereby amended and restated in its entirety to read as follows:

""Term Loan Commitment" means, with respect to each Lender, the Original Term Loan Commitment and/or the Term A Loan Commitment of such Lender."

(ix) The definition of "Total Revolving Credit Commitment" is hereby amended and restated in its entirety to read as follows:

""Total Revolving Credit Commitment" means the sum of the amounts of the Lenders' Revolving Credit Commitments, which amount is \$10,000,000 as of the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date."

(x) The definition of "Total Term Loan Commitment" is hereby amended and restated in its entirety to read as follows:

""Total Term Loan Commitment" means the sum of (i) the amount of the Lenders' Original Term Loan Commitments and (ii) the amount of the Lenders' Term A Loan Commitments."

(d) Section 2.01(a) (Commitments). Section 2.01(a) of the Financing Agreement is hereby amended and restated in its entirety to read as follows:

"Section 2.01. Commitments. (a) Subject to the terms and conditions and relying upon the representations and warranties herein set forth:

(i) each Revolving Loan Lender severally agrees to make Revolving Loans to the Borrower at any time and from time to time during the term of this Agreement, in an aggregate principal amount of Revolving Loans at any time outstanding not to exceed the amount of such Lender's Revolving Credit Commitment;

(ii) each Term Loan Lender severally made the Original Term Loan to the Borrower on the Effective Date, in an aggregate principal amount equal to such Lender's Original Term Loan Commitment;

(iii) each Term A Lender severally agrees to make the Term A Loan to the Borrower on the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date, in an aggregate principal amount not to exceed the amount of such Lender's Term A Loan Commitment; and

(iv) notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Section 2.01(a), the Loan Parties hereby acknowledge, confirm and agree that (1) immediately prior to the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date, the outstanding principal amount of the Revolving Loans is equal to \$0, (2) immediately prior to the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date, the outstanding principal amount of the Original Term Loan is equal to \$92,500,000 (such Indebtedness described in this clause (2) being hereinafter referred to as the "Original Term Loan Indebtedness"), (3) such Original Term Loan Indebtedness shall not be repaid on the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date, but rather shall be continued and re-evidenced by this Agreement as a portion of the Term Loans outstanding hereunder, (4) the Term A Loan made on the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date shall be an amount equal to the Total Term A Loan Commitment and (5) for all purposes of this Agreement and the other Loan Documents, the sum of the Original Term Loan Indebtedness immediately prior to the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date (\$92,500,000) and the Term A Loan made on the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date (\$15,000,000) shall constitute the Term Loan outstanding on the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date in the principal amount of \$107,500,000."

(e) Section 2.01(b) (Commitments). Section 2.01(b)(ii) is hereby amended and restated in its entirety as follows:

"(ii) The aggregate principal amount of the Original Term Loan made on the Effective Date shall not exceed the Total Original Term Loan Commitment. The aggregate principal amount of the Term A Loan made on the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date shall not exceed the Total Term A Loan Commitment. Any principal amount of the Term Loan which is repaid or prepaid may not be reborrowed."

(f) Section 2.02(a) (Making the Loans). Clause (iv) of Section 2.02(a) of the Financing Agreement is hereby amended and restated in its entirety as follows:

"(iv) the proposed borrowing date, which must be a Business Day, and, with respect to the portion of the Term Loan funded pursuant to the Total Original Term Loan Commitment must be the Effective Date, and with respect to the portion of the Term Loan funded pursuant to the Total Term A Loan Commitment must be the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date."

(g) Section 2.03(b) (Repayment of Loans; Evidence of Debt). The first sentence of Section 2.03(b) of the Financing Agreement is hereby amended and restated in its entirety to read as follows:

"(b) The outstanding principal amount of (i) the Original Term Loans made on the Effective Date shall be repaid in consecutive quarterly installments on the last day of each fiscal quarter beginning on June 30, 2016 in an aggregate principal amount equal to \$1,250,000.00 and (ii) the Term A Loans made on the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date shall be repaid in consecutive quarterly installments on the last day of each fiscal quarter beginning on March 31, 2018 in an aggregate principal amount equal to \$187,500.00. The outstanding unpaid principal amount of the Term Loan, and all accrued and unpaid interest thereon, shall be due and payable on the earlier of (i) the Final Maturity Date and (ii) the date on which the Term Loan is declared due and payable pursuant to the terms of this Agreement."

(h) Section 2.05(a)(ii) (Reduction of Term Loan Commitments). Section 2.05(a)(ii) of the Financing Agreement is hereby amended and restated in its entirety to read as follows:

"(ii) Term Loan. The Total Original Term Loan Commitment terminated at 5:00 p.m. (New York City time) on the Effective Date. The Total Term A Loan Commitment shall terminate at 5:00 p.m. (New York City time) on the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date."

(i) Section 6.01(s) (Use of Proceeds). Section 6.01(s) of the Financing Agreement is hereby amended and restated in its entirety to read as follows:

"(s) Use of Proceeds. The proceeds of (i) the Original Term Loans shall be used on the Effective Date to refinance the Existing Credit Facility, (ii) the Term A Loans may be used to purchase Convertible Notes and/or for working capital purposes and (iii) the Loans shall be used to pay fees and expenses in connection with the transactions contemplated hereby and fund working capital and general corporate purposes of the Borrower and its Subsidiaries."

(j) Section 7.01(a) (Reporting Requirements). Clause (xvi) of Section 7.01(a) of the Financing Agreement is hereby amended and restated in its entirety as follows:

"(xvi) on or prior to the date that is 5 Business Days after the last day of each calendar month commencing with the month ending November 30, 2017, a statement in form and detail satisfactory to the Agents and certified by an Authorized Officer of the Borrower containing a calculation of (A) the amount (if any) by which the principal amount of Convertible Notes purchased in accordance with Section 7.02(m)(iii)(B) during the month preceding such statement exceeds the Specified Note Disbursements made during such month (such excess (if any), the "Purchase Savings Amount") and (B) the amount that is (1) 15% of the Purchase Savings Amount for such month and (2) 15% of the aggregate Purchase Savings Amounts (such amount in this clause (2), the "Aggregate Savings Amount");".

(k) Section 7.01 (Convertible Notes). Section 7.01 of the Financing Agreement is hereby amended by adding a new clause (r) to the end of such Section to read as follows:

"(r) Convertible Notes. Any Convertible Notes purchased by any Loan Party shall immediately be retired by such Loan Party."

(l) Section 7.02(m) (Modifications of Indebtedness, Organizational Documents and Certain Other Agreements; Etc.). Clause (iii) of Section 7.02(m) of the Financing Agreement is hereby amended and restated in its entirety to read as follows:

"(iii) make any payment, prepayment, redemption, defeasance, sinking fund payment or repurchase of any Indebtedness in respect of the Convertible Notes or refund, refinance, replace or exchange any Indebtedness in respect of the Convertible Notes; provided that the Parent may (A) refund, refinance, replace, repay or exchange any Indebtedness in respect of the Convertible Notes with Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness, (B) use not more than \$15,000,000 to purchase Convertible Notes, (C) repay the Convertible Notes by making payment in Qualified Equity Interests of the Parent upon the conversion thereof, (D) on the maturity or conversion thereof, repay the Convertible Notes in cash in an amount not to exceed the principal amount of Convertible Notes that remain outstanding after the repayment of all or a portion of such Convertible Notes with Qualified Equity Interests to the maximum extent permissible under the Convertible Note Indenture in accordance with the election of the holders of the Convertible Notes pursuant to the Convertible Note Indenture; and (E) pay, when due, interest and reimbursable indemnities and expenses payable in respect of the Convertible Notes;"

(m) Representations and Warranties. Each representation and warranty set forth in Article VI of the Financing Agreement and each other Loan Document providing that such representations and warranties are made "as of the Effective Date" or like language is hereby amended to provide that such representations and warranties are true, correct and complete "as of the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date" except as set forth on the disclosure schedules delivered to the Agents on the date hereof and annexed hereto as Exhibit A (in respect of schedules to the Financing Agreement) and Exhibit B (in respect of schedules to the Security Agreement), which disclosure schedules shall amend and restate the corresponding schedules to the Financing Agreement and the Security Agreement, in each case as in effect prior to the date hereof.

3. Representations and Warranties. Each Loan Party hereby represents and warrants to the Agents and the Lenders as follows:

(a) Representations and Warranties; No Event of Default. The representations and warranties herein, in Article VI of the Financing Agreement and in each other Loan Document, certificate or other writing delivered by or on behalf of the Loan Parties to any Agent or any Lender pursuant to the Financing Agreement or any other Loan Document on or immediately prior to the Amendment Effective Date are true and correct in all material respects (except that such materiality qualifier shall not be applicable to any representations or warranties that already are qualified or modified as to "materiality" or "Material Adverse Effect" in the text thereof, which representations and warranties shall be true and correct in all respects subject to such qualification) on and as of such date as though made on and as of such date, except to the extent that any such representation or warranty expressly relates solely to an earlier date (in which case such representation or warranty shall be true and correct in all material respects (except that such materiality qualifier shall not be applicable to any representations or warranties that already are qualified or modified as to "materiality" or "Material Adverse Effect" in the text thereof, which representations and warranties shall be true and correct in all respects subject to such qualification))

on and as of such earlier date), and no Default or Event of Default has occurred and is continuing as of the Amendment Effective Date or would result from this Amendment becoming effective in accordance with its terms.

(b) Organization, Good Standing, Etc. Each Loan Party (i) is a corporation, limited liability company or limited partnership duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the jurisdiction of its organization, (ii) has all requisite power and authority to conduct its business as now conducted and as presently contemplated, and to execute and deliver this Amendment, and to consummate the transactions contemplated hereby and by the Financing Agreement, as amended hereby, and (iii) is duly qualified to do business in, and is in good standing in each jurisdiction where the character of the properties owned or leased by it or in which the transaction of its business makes such qualification necessary except (solely for the purposes of this subclause (iii)) where the failure to be so qualified and be in good standing could not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(c) Authorization, Etc. The execution and delivery by each Loan Party of this Amendment and each other Loan Document to which it is or will be a party, and the performance by it of the Financing Agreement, as amended hereby, (i) have been duly authorized by all necessary action, (ii) do not and will not contravene (A) any of its Governing Documents, (B) any applicable Requirement of Law or (C) any Material Contract binding on or otherwise affecting it or any of its properties, (iii) do not and will not result in or require the creation of any Lien (other than pursuant to any Loan Document) upon or with respect to any of its properties, and (iv) do not and will not result in any default, noncompliance, suspension, revocation, impairment, forfeiture or nonrenewal of any permit, license, authorization or approval applicable to its operations or any of its properties, except, in the case of clauses (ii)(B), (ii)(C) and (iv), to the extent where such contravention, default, noncompliance, suspension, revocation, impairment, forfeiture or nonrenewal could not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(d) Enforceability of Loan Documents. This Amendment is, and each other Loan Document to which any Loan Party is or will be a party, when delivered hereunder, will be, a legal, valid and binding obligation of such Person, enforceable against such Person in accordance with its terms, except as enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or other similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally and by principles of equity.

(e) Governmental Approvals. No authorization or approval or other action by, and no notice to or filing with, any Governmental Authority is required in connection with the due execution, delivery and performance by any Loan Party of any Loan Document to which it is or will be a party.

4. Conditions to Effectiveness. This Amendment shall become effective only upon satisfaction in full, in a manner satisfactory to the Agents, of the following conditions precedent (the first date upon which all such conditions shall have been satisfied being hereinafter referred to as the "Amendment No. 2 Effective Date"):

(a) Representations and Warranties. The representations and warranties contained in this Amendment and in Article VI of the Financing Agreement and in each other Loan Document shall be true and correct in all material respects (except that such materiality qualifier shall not be applicable to any representations or warranties that already are qualified or modified as to "materiality" or "Material Adverse Effect" in the text thereof, which representations and warranties shall be true and correct in all respects subject to such qualification) on and as of the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date as though made on and as of such date, except to the extent that any such representation or warranty expressly relates solely to an earlier date (in which case such representation or warranty shall be true and correct in all

material respects (except that such materiality qualifier shall not be applicable to any representations or warranties that already are qualified or modified as to "materiality" or "Material Adverse Effect" in the text thereof, which representations and warranties shall be true and correct in all respects subject to such qualification) on and as of such earlier date).

(b) No Default; Event of Default. No Default or Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing on the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date or result from this Amendment becoming effective in accordance with its terms.

(c) Material Adverse Effect. The Agents shall have determined, in their reasonable judgment, that no event or development shall have occurred since December 31, 2016, which could reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(d) Liens; Priority. The Agents shall be satisfied that the Collateral Agent has been granted, and holds, for the benefit of the Agents and the Lenders, a perfected, first priority Lien on and security interest in all of the Collateral, subject only to Permitted Liens, to the extent such Liens and security interests are required pursuant to the Loan Documents to be granted or perfected on or before the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date.

(e) Approvals. All consents, authorizations and approvals of, and filings and registrations with, and all other actions in respect of, any Governmental Authority or other Person required in connection with any Loan Document or the transactions contemplated thereby or the conduct of the Loan Parties' business shall have been obtained or made and shall be in full force and effect. There shall exist no claim, action, suit, investigation, litigation or proceeding (including, without limitation, shareholder or derivative litigation) pending or, to the knowledge of any Loan Party, threatened in any court or before any arbitrator or Governmental Authority which (i) relates to the Loan Documents or the transactions contemplated thereby or (ii) could reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(f) Legality. The making of such Loan shall not contravene any law, rule or regulation applicable to any Secured Party.

(g) Payment of Fees, Etc. The Borrower shall have paid on or before the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date all fees, costs, expenses and taxes then payable pursuant to Section 2.06 of the Financing Agreement and Section 12.04 of the Financing Agreement.

(h) Delivery of Documents. The Collateral Agent shall have received on or before the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date the following, each in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Collateral Agent and, unless indicated otherwise, dated the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date:

(i) this Amendment, duly executed by the Loan Parties, each Agent and each Lender;

(ii) [reserved];

(iii) [reserved];

(iv) a certificate of an Authorized Officer of each Loan Party, certifying (A) (1) as to copies of the Governing Documents of such Loan Party, together with all amendments thereto (including, without limitation, a true and complete copy of the charter, certificate of formation, certificate

of limited partnership or other publicly filed organizational document of each Loan Party certified as of a recent date not more than 30 days prior to the Effective Date by an appropriate official of the jurisdiction of organization of such Loan Party which shall set forth the same complete name of such Loan Party as is set forth herein and the organizational number of such Loan Party, if an organizational number is issued in such jurisdiction) or (2) that no changes have been made to such Governing Documents delivered to

the Collateral Agent on or after the Effective Date, (B) as to a copy of the resolutions or written consents of such Loan Party authorizing (1) the borrowings hereunder and the transactions contemplated by the Loan Documents to which such Loan Party is or will be a party and (2) the execution, delivery and performance by such Loan Party of each Loan Document to which such Loan Party is or will be a party and the execution and delivery of the other documents to be delivered by such Person in connection herewith and therewith, (C) (1) the names and true signatures of the representatives of such Loan Party authorized to sign each Loan Document (in the case of a Borrower, including, without limitation, Notices of Borrowing, LIBOR Notices and all other notices under this Agreement and the other Loan Documents) to which such Loan Party is or will be a party and the other documents to be executed and delivered by such Loan Party in connection herewith and therewith, together with evidence of the incumbency of such authorized officers or (2) that no changes have been made to each certificate of incumbency delivered to the Collateral Agent on or after the Effective Date and (D) as to the matters set forth in Sections 4(a) and 4(b) of this Amendment;

(v) a certificate of the chief financial officer of the Parent certifying compliance with the covenants set forth in Section 7.03 of the Financing Agreement;

(vi) a certificate of the appropriate official(s) of (A) the jurisdiction of organization of each Loan Party and (B) each jurisdiction of foreign qualification of each Loan Party in which such Loan Party owns or leases real property certifying as of a recent date not more than 30 days prior to the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date as to the subsistence in good standing of, and the payment of taxes by, such Loan Party in such jurisdictions;

(vii) an opinion of (A) Covington & Burling LLP, outside counsel to the Loan Parties and (B) the General Counsel of the Loan Parties, in each case as to such matters as the Collateral Agent may reasonably request;

(viii) a certificate of the chief financial officer of the Parent, certifying as to the solvency of the Loan Parties on a consolidated basis (after giving effect to the Term A Loans made on the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date); and

(ix) a Notice of Borrowing pursuant to Section 2.02 of the Financing Agreement.

The Agents and the Lenders agree that their execution of this Amendment shall mean that the conditions to effectiveness set forth in Sections 4(c), (g) and (h) have been satisfied.

5. Continued Effectiveness of the Financing Agreement and Other Loan Documents. Each Loan Party hereby (a) acknowledges and consents to this Amendment, (b) confirms and agrees that the Financing Agreement and each other Loan Document to which it is a party is, and shall continue to be, in full force and effect and is hereby ratified and confirmed in all respects, except that on and after the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date, all references in any such Loan Document to "the Financing Agreement", the "Agreement", "thereto", "thereof", "thereunder" or words of like import referring to the Financing Agreement shall mean the Financing Agreement as amended by this Amendment, and (c)

confirms and agrees that, to the extent that any such Loan Document purports to assign or pledge to the Collateral Agent, for the benefit of the Agents and the Lenders, or to grant to the Collateral Agent, for the benefit of the Agents and the Lenders, a security interest in or Lien on any Collateral as security for the

Obligations of the Loan Parties from time to time existing in respect of the Financing Agreement (as amended hereby) and the other Loan Documents, such pledge, assignment and/or grant of the security interest or Lien is hereby ratified and confirmed in all respects. This Amendment does not and shall not affect any of the obligations of the Loan Parties, other than as expressly provided herein, including, without limitation, the Loan Parties' obligations to repay the Loans in accordance with the terms of Financing Agreement or the obligations of the Loan Parties under any Loan Document to which they are a party, all of which obligations shall remain in full force and effect. Except as expressly provided herein, the execution, delivery and effectiveness of this Amendment shall not operate as a waiver of any right, power or remedy of any Agent or any Lender under the Financing Agreement or any other Loan Document nor constitute a waiver of any provision of the Financing Agreement or any other Loan Document.

6. No Novation. Nothing herein contained shall be construed as a substitution or novation of the Obligations outstanding under the Financing Agreement or instruments securing the same, which shall remain in full force and effect, except as modified hereby.

7. No Representations by Agents or Lenders. Each Loan Party hereby acknowledges that it has not relied on any representation, written or oral, express or implied, by any Agent or any Lender, other than those expressly contained herein, in entering into this Amendment.

8. Release. Each Loan Party hereby acknowledges and agrees that: (a) neither it nor any of its Subsidiaries has any claim or cause of action against any Agent or any Lender (or any of the directors, officers, employees, agents, attorneys or consultants of any of the foregoing) and (b) the Agents and the Lenders have heretofore properly performed and satisfied in a timely manner all of their obligations to the Loan Parties, and all of their Subsidiaries and Affiliates. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Agents and the Lenders wish (and the Loan Parties agree) to eliminate any possibility that any past conditions, acts, omissions, events or circumstances would impair or otherwise adversely affect any of their rights, interests, security and/or remedies. Accordingly, for and in consideration of the agreements contained in this Amendment and other good and valuable consideration, each Loan Party (for itself and its Subsidiaries and Affiliates and the successors, assigns, heirs and representatives of each of the foregoing) (collectively, the "Releasers") does hereby fully, finally, unconditionally and irrevocably release, waive and forever discharge the Agents and the Lenders, together with their respective Affiliates and Related Funds, and each of the directors, officers, employees, agents, attorneys and consultants of each of the foregoing (collectively, the "Released Parties"), from any and all debts, claims, allegations, obligations, damages, costs, attorneys' fees, suits, demands, liabilities, actions, proceedings and causes of action, in each case, whether known or unknown, contingent or fixed, direct or indirect, and of whatever nature or description, and whether in law or in equity, under contract, tort, statute or otherwise, which any Releaser has heretofore had or now or hereafter can, shall or may have against any Released Party by reason of any act, omission or thing whatsoever done or omitted to be done, in each case, on or prior to the Amendment No. 2 Effective Date directly arising out of, connected with or related to this Amendment, the Financing Agreement or any other Loan Document, or any act, event or transaction related or attendant thereto, or the agreements of any Agent or any Lender contained therein, or the possession, use, operation or control of any of the assets of any Loan Party, or the making of any Loans or other advances, or the management of such Loans or other advances or the Collateral. Each Loan Party represents and warrants that it has no knowledge of any claim by any Releaser against any Released Party or of any facts or acts or omissions of

any Released Party which on the date hereof would be the basis of a claim by any Releasor against any Released Party which would not be released hereby.

9. Further Assurances. The Loan Parties shall execute any and all further documents, agreements and instruments, and take all further actions, as may be required under Applicable Law or as any Agent may reasonably request, in order to effect the purposes of this Amendment.

10. Miscellaneous.

(a) This Amendment may be executed in any number of counterparts and by different parties hereto in separate counterparts, each of which shall be deemed to be an original but all of which taken together shall constitute one and the same agreement. Delivery of an executed counterpart of this Amendment by facsimile or electronic mail shall be equally effective as delivery of an original executed counterpart of this Amendment.

(b) Section and paragraph headings herein are included for convenience of reference only and shall not constitute a part of this Amendment for any other purpose.

(c) This Amendment shall be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York.

(d) Each Loan Party hereby acknowledges and agrees that this Amendment constitutes a "Loan Document" under the Financing Agreement. Accordingly, it shall be an immediate Event of Default under the Financing Agreement if any representation or warranty made by any Loan Party under or in connection with this Amendment shall have been incorrect in any material respect (or in any respect if such representation or warranty is qualified or modified as to materiality or "Material Adverse Effect" in the text thereof) when made or deemed made.

(e) Any provision of this Amendment that is prohibited or unenforceable in any jurisdiction shall, as to such jurisdiction, be ineffective to the extent of such prohibition or unenforceability without invalidating the remaining portions hereof or affecting the validity or enforceability of such provision in any other jurisdiction.

[*Remainder of page intentionally left blank.*]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Amendment to be executed and delivered as of the date set forth on the first page hereof.

BORROWER:

AVID TECHNOLOGY, INC.

By: /s/ Brian E. Agle

Name: Brian E. Agle

Title: Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer

GUARANTOR:

AVID TECHNOLOGY WORLDWIDE, INC.

By: /s/ Brian E. Agle

Name: Brian E. Agle

Title: President

ADMINISTRATIVE AGENT AND COLLATERAL AGENT:

CERBERUS BUSINESS FINANCE, LLC

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf
Name: Daniel E. Wolf
Title: Chief Executive Officer

Lenders:

CERBERUS ASRS FUNDING LLC

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf
Name: Daniel E. Wolf
Title: Vice President

CERBERUS ASRS HOLDINGS LLC

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf
Name: Daniel E. Wolf
Title: Vice President

CERBERUS AUS LEVERED HOLDINGS LP

By: CAL I GP Holdings LLC
Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf
Name: Daniel E. Wolf
Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS AUS LEVERED II LP

By: CAL II GP, LLC
Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf
Name: Daniel E. Wolf
Title: Vice President

CERBERUS ICQ LEVERED LLC

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf
Name: Daniel E. Wolf
Title: Vice President

CERBERUS ICQ LEVERED LOAN OPPORTUNITIES FUND, L.P.

By: Cerberus ICQ Levered Opportunities GP, LLC
Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf
Name: Daniel E. Wolf
Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS ICQ OFFSHORE LEVERED LP

By: Cerberus ICQ Offshore GP LLC

Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf

Name: Daniel E. Wolf

Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS ICQ OFFSHORE LOAN OPPORTUNITIES MASTER FUND, L.P.

By: Cerberus ICQ Offshore Levered GP, LLC

Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf

Name: Daniel E. Wolf

Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS KRS LEVERED LOAN OPPORTUNITIES FUND, L.P.

By: Cerberus KRS Levered Opportunities GP, LLC

Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf

Name: Daniel E. Wolf

Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS LEVERED LOAN OPPORTUNITIES FUND III, L.P.

By: Cerberus Levered Opportunities III GP, LLC

Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf

Name: Daniel E. Wolf

Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS LOAN FUNDING XIX, L.P.

By: Cerberus LFGP XIX, LLC

Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf

Name: Daniel E. Wolf

Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS LOAN FUNDING XV, L.P.

By: Cerberus ICQ GP, LLC

Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf

Name: Daniel E. Wolf

Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS LOAN FUNDING XVI LP

By: Cerberus PSERS GP, LLC

Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf

Name: Daniel E. Wolf

Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS LOAN FUNDING XVII LTD.

By: Cerberus ASRS Holdings LLC, its attorney-in-fact

/s/ Daniel E. Wolf

Duly Authorized Signatory

Name: Daniel E. Wolf

Title: Vice President

CERBERUS NJ CREDIT OPPORTUNITIES FUND, L.P.

By: Cerberus NJ Credit Opportunities GP, LLC

Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf

Name: Daniel E. Wolf

Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS PSERS LEVERED LOAN OPPORTUNITIES FUND, L.P.

By: Cerberus PSERS Levered Opportunities GP, LLC

Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf

Name: Daniel E. Wolf

Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS FSBA HOLDINGS LLC

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf

Name: Daniel E. Wolf

Title: Vice President

CERBERUS ND CREDIT HOLDINGS LLC

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf

Name: Daniel E. Wolf

Title: Vice President

CERBERUS OFFSHORE LEVERED LOAN OPPORTUNITIES MASTER FUND III, L.P.

By: Cerberus Offshore Levered Opportunities III GP, LLC
Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf
Name: Daniel E. Wolf
Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS SWC LEVERED LOAN OPPORTUNITIES MASTER FUND, L.P.

By: Cerberus SWC Levered Opportunities GP, LLC
Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf
Name: Daniel E. Wolf
Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS LOAN FUNDING XVIII L.P.

By: Cerberus LFGP VXIII, LLC
Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf
Name: Daniel E. Wolf
Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS LOAN FUNDING XX L.P.

By: Cerberus LFGP XX, LLC
Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf
Name: Daniel E. Wolf
Title: Senior Managing Director

CERBERUS N-1 FUNDING LLC

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf
Name: Daniel E. Wolf
Title: Vice President

CERBERUS OFFSHORE LEVERED III LP

By: COL III GP Inc.
Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf
Name: Daniel E. Wolf
Title: Vice President

CERBERUS SWC LEVERED II LLC

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf
Name: Daniel E. Wolf
Title: Vice President

EXHIBIT A

Financing Agreement Schedules



EXHIBIT B

Security Agreement Schedules

**AMENDMENT NO. 3
TO FINANCING AGREEMENT**

AMENDMENT NO. 3 TO FINANCING AGREEMENT, dated as of February 9, 2018 (this "Amendment"), to the Financing Agreement, dated as of February 26, 2016 (as amended, restated, supplemented or otherwise modified from time to time, the "Financing Agreement"), by and among Avid Technology, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "Parent" or the "Borrower"), each subsidiary of the Parent listed as a "Guarantor" on the signature pages thereto (together with each other Person that executes a joinder agreement and becomes a "Guarantor" thereunder or otherwise guaranties all or any part of the Obligations (as defined therein), each a "Guarantor" and, collectively, the "Guarantors"), the lenders from time to time party thereto (each a "Lender" and, collectively, the "Lenders"), Cerberus Business Finance, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company ("CBF"), as collateral agent for the Lenders (in such capacity, together with its successors and assigns in such capacity, the "Collateral Agent"), and CBF, as administrative agent for the Lenders (in such capacity, together with its successors and assigns in such capacity, the "Administrative Agent" and together with the Collateral Agent, each an "Agent" and collectively, the "Agents").

WHEREAS, the Loan Parties have requested that the Agents and the Lenders amend certain terms and conditions of the Financing Agreement; and

WHEREAS, the Agents and the Lenders are willing to amend such terms and conditions of the Financing Agreement on the terms and conditions set forth herein.

NOW THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties hereto hereby agree as follows:

1. Definitions. All terms used herein that are defined in the Financing Agreement and not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Financing Agreement.

2. Amendments.

(a) New Definitions. Section 1.01 of the Financing Agreement is hereby amended by adding the following definitions, in appropriate alphabetical order:

(i) "'Amendment No. 3" means Amendment No. 3 to Financing Agreement, dated as of February 9, 2018, by and among the Loan Parties and the Agents."

(ii) "'Amendment No. 3 Effective Date" has the meaning set forth in Amendment No. 3."

(b) Existing Definitions. Section 1.01 of the Financing Agreement is hereby amended by amending and restating clause (j) of the definition of "Permitted Indebtedness" in its entirety as follows:

"(j) Indebtedness of the Parent or any Subsidiary as an account party in respect of letters of credit (i) in the ordinary course of business in an aggregate face amount not exceeding \$5,000,000 at any time outstanding and (ii) for those suppliers, customers and vendors identified by the Borrower to the Collateral Agent (and consented to by the Collateral Agent) in writing on the Amendment No. 3 Effective

Date (and successors thereto) and other letters of credit consented to by the Collateral Agent in writing in an aggregate face amount not exceeding \$7,000,000 at any time outstanding:".

3. Representations and Warranties. Each Loan Party hereby represents and warrants to the Agents and the Lenders as follows:

(a) Representations and Warranties; No Event of Default. Except as disclosed to the Collateral Agent in writing on the Amendment No. 3 Effective Date, the representations and warranties herein, in Article VI of the Financing Agreement and in each other Loan Document, certificate or other writing delivered by or on behalf of the Loan Parties to any Agent or any Lender pursuant to the Financing Agreement or any other Loan Document on or immediately prior to the Amendment No. 3 Effective Date are true and correct in all material respects (except that such materiality qualifier shall not be applicable to any representations or warranties that already are qualified or modified as to "materiality" or "Material Adverse Effect" in the text thereof, which representations and warranties shall be true and correct in all respects subject to such qualification) on and as of such date as though made on and as of such date, except to the extent that any such representation or warranty expressly relates solely to an earlier date (in which case such representation or warranty shall be true and correct in all material respects (except that such materiality qualifier shall not be applicable to any representations or warranties that already are qualified or modified as to "materiality" or "Material Adverse Effect" in the text thereof, which representations and warranties shall be true and correct in all respects subject to such qualification) on and as of such earlier date), and no Default or Event of Default has occurred and is continuing as of the Amendment No. 3 Effective Date or would result from this Amendment becoming effective in accordance with its terms.

(b) Organization, Good Standing, Etc. Each Loan Party (i) is a corporation, limited liability company or limited partnership duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the jurisdiction of its organization, (ii) has all requisite power and authority to conduct its business as now conducted and as presently contemplated, and to execute and deliver this Amendment, and to consummate the transactions contemplated hereby and by the Financing Agreement, as amended hereby, and (iii) is duly qualified to do business in, and is in good standing in each jurisdiction where the character of the properties owned or leased by it or in which the transaction of its business makes such qualification necessary except (solely for the purposes of this subclause (iii)) where the failure to be so qualified and be in good standing could not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(c) Authorization, Etc. The execution and delivery by each Loan Party of this Amendment and each other Loan Document to which it is or will be a party, and the performance by it of the Financing Agreement, as amended hereby, (i) have been duly authorized by all necessary action, (ii) do not and will not contravene (A) any of its Governing Documents, (B) any applicable Requirement of Law or (C) any Material Contract binding on or otherwise affecting it or any of its properties, (iii) do not and will not result in or require the creation of any Lien (other than pursuant to any Loan Document) upon or with respect to any of its properties, and (iv) do not and will not result in any default, noncompliance, suspension, revocation, impairment, forfeiture or nonrenewal of any permit, license, authorization or approval applicable to its operations or any of its properties, except, in the case of clauses (ii)(B), (ii)(C) and (iv), to the extent where such contravention, default, noncompliance, suspension, revocation, impairment, forfeiture or nonrenewal could not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(d) Enforceability of Loan Documents. This Amendment is, and each other Loan Document to which any Loan Party is or will be a party, when delivered hereunder, will be, a legal, valid and binding obligation of such Person, enforceable against such Person in accordance with its terms, except as

enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or other similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally and by principles of equity.

(e) Governmental Approvals. No authorization or approval or other action by, and no notice to or filing with, any Governmental Authority is required in connection with the due execution, delivery and performance by any Loan Party of any Loan Document to which it is or will be a party.

4. Conditions to Effectiveness. This Amendment shall become effective only upon satisfaction in full, in a manner satisfactory to the Agents, of the following conditions precedent (the first date upon which all such conditions shall have been satisfied being hereinafter referred to as the "Amendment No. 3 Effective Date"):

(a) Representations and Warranties. The representations and warranties contained in this Amendment and in Article VI of the Financing Agreement and in each other Loan Document shall be true and correct in all material respects (except that such materiality qualifier shall not be applicable to any representations or warranties that already are qualified or modified as to "materiality" or "Material Adverse Effect" in the text thereof, which representations and warranties shall be true and correct in all respects subject to such qualification) on and as of the Amendment No. 3 Effective Date as though made on and as of such date, except to the extent that any such representation or warranty expressly relates solely to an earlier date (in which case such representation or warranty shall be true and correct in all material respects (except that such materiality qualifier shall not be applicable to any representations or warranties that already are qualified or modified as to "materiality" or "Material Adverse Effect" in the text thereof, which representations and warranties shall be true and correct in all respects subject to such qualification) on and as of such earlier date).

(b) No Default; Event of Default. No Default or Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing on the Amendment No. 3 Effective Date or result from this Amendment becoming effective in accordance with its terms.

(c) Material Adverse Effect. The Agents shall have determined, in their reasonable judgment, that no event or development shall have occurred since December 31, 2016, which could reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(d) Liens; Priority. The Agents shall be satisfied that the Collateral Agent has been granted, and holds, for the benefit of the Agents and the Lenders, a perfected, first priority Lien on and security interest in all of the Collateral, subject only to Permitted Liens, to the extent such Liens and security interests are required pursuant to the Loan Documents to be granted or perfected on or before the Amendment No. 3 Effective Date.

(e) Approvals. All consents, authorizations and approvals of, and filings and registrations with, and all other actions in respect of, any Governmental Authority or other Person required in connection with any Loan Document or the transactions contemplated thereby or the conduct of the Loan Parties' business shall have been obtained or made and shall be in full force and effect. There shall exist no claim, action, suit, investigation, litigation or proceeding (including, without limitation, shareholder or derivative litigation) pending or, to the knowledge of any Loan Party, threatened in any court or before any arbitrator or Governmental Authority which (i) relates to the Loan Documents or the transactions contemplated thereby or (ii) could reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(f) Delivery of Documents. The Collateral Agent shall have received on or before the Amendment No. 3 Effective Date this Amendment, duly executed by the Loan Parties and the Agents.

The Agents (on behalf of the Required Lenders) (i) agree that their execution of this Amendment shall mean that the conditions to effectiveness set forth in Sections 4(c), (d) and (f) have been satisfied, and (ii) represent that the Required Lenders have consented to this Amendment.

5. Continued Effectiveness of the Financing Agreement and Other Loan Documents. Each Loan Party hereby (a) acknowledges and consents to this Amendment, (b) confirms and agrees that the Financing Agreement and each other Loan Document to which it is a party is, and shall continue to be, in full force and effect and is hereby ratified and confirmed in all respects, except that on and after the Amendment No. 3 Effective Date, all references in any such Loan Document to "the Financing Agreement", the "Agreement", "thereto", "thereof", "thereunder" or words of like import referring to the Financing Agreement shall mean the Financing Agreement as amended by this Amendment, and (c) confirms and agrees that, to the extent that any such Loan Document purports to assign or pledge to the Collateral Agent, for the benefit of the Agents and the Lenders, or to grant to the Collateral Agent, for the benefit of the Agents and the Lenders, a security interest in or Lien on any Collateral as security for the Obligations of the Loan Parties from time to time existing in respect of the Financing Agreement (as amended hereby) and the other Loan Documents, such pledge, assignment and/or grant of the security interest or Lien is hereby ratified and confirmed in all respects. This Amendment does not and shall not affect any of the obligations of the Loan Parties, other than as expressly provided herein, including, without limitation, the Loan Parties' obligations to repay the Loans in accordance with the terms of Financing Agreement or the obligations of the Loan Parties under any Loan Document to which they are a party, all of which obligations shall remain in full force and effect. Except as expressly provided herein, the execution, delivery and effectiveness of this Amendment shall not operate as a waiver of any right, power or remedy of any Agent or any Lender under the Financing Agreement or any other Loan Document nor constitute a waiver of any provision of the Financing Agreement or any other Loan Document.

6. No Novation. Nothing herein contained shall be construed as a substitution or novation of the Obligations outstanding under the Financing Agreement or instruments securing the same, which shall remain in full force and effect, except as modified hereby.

7. No Representations by Agents or Lenders. Each Loan Party hereby acknowledges that it has not relied on any representation, written or oral, express or implied, by any Agent or any Lender, other than those expressly contained herein, in entering into this Amendment.

8. Release. Each Loan Party hereby acknowledges and agrees that: (a) neither it nor any of its Subsidiaries has any claim or cause of action against any Agent or any Lender (or any of the directors, officers, employees, agents, attorneys or consultants of any of the foregoing) and (b) the Agents and the Lenders have heretofore properly performed and satisfied in a timely manner all of their obligations to the Loan Parties, and all of their Subsidiaries and Affiliates. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Agents and the Lenders wish (and the Loan Parties agree) to eliminate any possibility that any past conditions, acts, omissions, events or circumstances would impair or otherwise adversely affect any of their rights, interests, security and/or remedies. Accordingly, for and in consideration of the agreements contained in this Amendment and other good and valuable consideration, each Loan Party (for itself and its Subsidiaries and Affiliates and the successors, assigns, heirs and representatives of each of the foregoing) (collectively, the "Releasers") does hereby fully, finally, unconditionally and irrevocably release, waive and forever discharge the Agents and the Lenders, together with their respective Affiliates and Related

Funds, and each of the directors, officers, employees, agents, attorneys and consultants of each of the foregoing (collectively, the "Released Parties"), from any and all debts, claims, allegations, obligations, damages, costs, attorneys' fees, suits, demands, liabilities, actions, proceedings and causes of action, in each case, whether known or unknown, contingent or fixed, direct or indirect, and of whatever nature or description, and whether in law or in equity, under contract, tort, statute or otherwise, which any Releasor has heretofore had or now or hereafter can, shall or may have against any Released Party by reason of any act, omission or thing whatsoever done or omitted to be done, in each case, on or prior to the Amendment No. 3 Effective Date directly arising out of, connected with or related to this Amendment, the Financing Agreement or any other Loan Document, or any act, event or transaction related or attendant thereto, or the agreements of any Agent or any Lender contained therein, or the possession, use, operation or control of any of the assets of any Loan Party, or the making of any Loans or other advances, or the management of such Loans or other advances or the Collateral. Each Loan Party represents and warrants that it has no knowledge of any claim by any Releasor against any Released Party or of any facts or acts or omissions of any Released Party which on the date hereof would be the basis of a claim by any Releasor against any Released Party which would not be released hereby.

9. Further Assurances. The Loan Parties shall execute any and all further documents, agreements and instruments, and take all further actions, as may be required under Applicable Law or as any Agent may reasonably request, in order to effect the purposes of this Amendment.

10. Fees and Expenses. The Borrower shall promptly pay all fees, costs and expenses of the Agents and the Lenders in respect of this Amendment in accordance with Section 12.04 of the Financing Agreement.

11. Miscellaneous.

(a) This Amendment may be executed in any number of counterparts and by different parties hereto in separate counterparts, each of which shall be deemed to be an original but all of which taken together shall constitute one and the same agreement. Delivery of an executed counterpart of this Amendment by facsimile or electronic mail shall be equally effective as delivery of an original executed counterpart of this Amendment.

(b) Section and paragraph headings herein are included for convenience of reference only and shall not constitute a part of this Amendment for any other purpose.

(c) This Amendment shall be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York.

(d) Each Loan Party hereby acknowledges and agrees that this Amendment constitutes a "Loan Document" under the Financing Agreement. Accordingly, it shall be an immediate Event of Default under the Financing Agreement if any representation or warranty made by any Loan Party under or in connection with this Amendment shall have been incorrect in any material respect (or in any respect if such representation or warranty is qualified or modified as to materiality or "Material Adverse Effect" in the text thereof) when made or deemed made.

(e) Any provision of this Amendment that is prohibited or unenforceable in any jurisdiction shall, as to such jurisdiction, be ineffective to the extent of such prohibition or unenforceability without invalidating the remaining portions hereof or affecting the validity or enforceability of such provision in any other jurisdiction.

[*Remainder of page intentionally left blank.*]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Amendment to be executed and delivered as of the date set forth on the first page hereof.

BORROWER:

AVID TECHNOLOGY, INC.

By: /s/ Brian E. Agle

Name: Brian E. Agle

Title: Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer

GUARANTOR:

AVID TECHNOLOGY WORLDWIDE, INC.

By: /s/ Brian E. Agle

Name: Brian E. Agle

Title: President

ADMINISTRATIVE AGENT AND COLLATERAL AGENT:

CERBERUS BUSINESS FINANCE, LLC

By: /s/ Daniel E. Wolf

Name: Daniel E. Wolf

Title: Chief Executive Officer

SUBSIDIARIES OF THE REGISTRANT AS OF DECEMBER 31, 2017

AVID SYSTEMS, INC. (California)
AVID CV LLC (Delaware)
AVID TECHNOLOGY WORLDWIDE, INC. (Delaware)
ORAD INC. (Delaware)
AVID TECHNOLOGY (AUSTRALIA) PTY LTD (Australia)
AVID TECHNOLOGY CANADA CORP. (Canada)
AVID TECHNOLOGY (BEIJING) CO., LTD (China)
AVID TECHNOLOGY EUROPE LIMITED (England)
EUPHONIX EUROPE LIMITED (England)
INTEGRATED BROADCAST SERVICES LIMITED (IBIS) (England)
IVSM LIMITED (England)
AVID TECHNOLOGY S.A.R.L. (France)
GETRIS SAS (France)
AVID TECHNOLOGY GMBH (Germany)
AVID TECHNOLOGY HOLDING GMBH (Germany)
AVID DEVELOPMENT GMBH (Germany)
BLUE ORDER TECHNOLOGIES GMBH (Germany)
ORAD HI-TEC SYSTEMS DEUTSCHLAND GMBH (Germany)
AVID NORTH ASIA LIMITED (Hong Kong)
ORAD HI-TEC SYSTEMS (NORTH ASIA) LIMITED (Hong Kong)
AVID TECHNOLOGY (INDIA) PRIVATE LIMITED (India)
JIM LTD. (Israel)
ORAD HI-TEC SYSTEMS LTD. (Israel)
ORADNET LTD. (Israel)
DIGIDESIGN ITALY S.R.L. (Italy)
AVID TECHNOLOGY K.K. (Japan)
AVID TECHNOLOGY MEXICO, S. DE R.L. DE C.V. (Mexico)
AVID GENERAL PARTNER B.V. (Netherlands)
AVID TECHNOLOGY C.V. (Netherlands)
AVID TECHNOLOGY HOLDING B.V. (Netherlands)
AVID TECHNOLOGY INTERNATIONAL B.V. (Netherlands)
ORAD NETHERLANDS B.V. (Netherlands)
ORAD HI-TEC SYSTEMS POLAND SP. Z.O.O (Poland)
AVID TECHNOLOGY (S.E. ASIA) PTE LTD (Singapore)
AVID TECHNOLOGY S.L. (Spain)
ORAD HI-TEC SYSTEMS IBERIA SL (Spain)
AVID NORDIC A.B. (Sweden)
AVID TECHNOLOGY SERVICES TAIWAN CO., LTD (Taiwan)

CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

We consent to the incorporation by reference in Registration Statement Nos. 333-42569, 333-56631, 333-60181, 333-73321, 333-87539, 333-33674, 333-37952, 333-48338, 333-48340, 333-64016, 333-75470, 333-151202, 333-200139 and 333-218677 each on Form S-8 of our report dated March 15, 2016, relating to the financial statements of Avid Technology, Inc., appearing in this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Avid Technology, Inc. for the year ended December 31, 2017.

/s/ Deloitte & Touche LLP

Boston, Massachusetts
March 15, 2018

CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

We hereby consent to the incorporation by reference in the Registration Statements on Forms S-8 (Nos. 333-42569, 333-56631, 333-60181, 333-73321, 333-87539, 333-33674, 333-37952, 333-48338, 333-48340, 333-64016, 333-75470, 333-151202, 333-200139 and 333-218677) of Avid Technology, Inc. of our reports dated March 15, 2018, relating to the consolidated financial statements and the effectiveness of Avid Technology, Inc.'s internal control over financial reporting, which appear in this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Avid Technology, Inc.

/s/ BDO USA, LLP

Boston, Massachusetts
March 15, 2018

CERTIFICATION

I, Jeff Rosica, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Avid Technology, Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
 - a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
 - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
 - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
 - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
 - a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
 - b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 15, 2018

/s/ Jeff Rosica

Jeff Rosica

President and Chief Executive Officer
(Principal Executive Officer)

CERTIFICATION

I, Brian E. Agle, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Avid Technology, Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
 - a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
 - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
 - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
 - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
 - a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
 - b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 15, 2018

/s/ Brian E Agle

Brian E. Agle

Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer

(Principal Financial Officer)

**CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO 18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350,
AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO
SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

In connection with the Annual Report on Form 10-K of Avid Technology, Inc. (the "Company") for the year ended December 31, 2017 as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the "Report"), the undersigned, Jeff Rosica, President and Chief Executive Officer of the Company, and Brian E. Agle, Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of the Company, each hereby certifies, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, that:

- (1) The Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
- (2) The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

Date: March 15, 2018

/s/ Jeff Rosica

Jeff Rosica

President and Chief Executive Officer

(Principal Executive Officer)

Date: March 15, 2018

/s/ Brian E. Agle

Brian E. Agle

Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer

(Principal Financial Officer)

A certification furnished pursuant to this item will not be deemed "filed" for purposes of Section 18 of the Exchange Act (15 U.S.C. 78r), or otherwise subject to the liability of that section. Such certification will not be deemed to be incorporated by reference into any filing under the Securities Act or the Exchange Act, except to the extent that the registrant specifically incorporates it by reference.